



A

New General COLLECTION of
VOYAGES and TRAVELS:

CONSISTING

Of the most Esteemed RELATIONS, which have been
hitherto published in any LANGUAGE:

Comprehending every Thing remarkable in its Kind, in

EUROPE, ASIA, AFRICA, and AMERICA,

With respect to the

Several EMPIRES, KINGDOMS, and PROVINCES; their SITUATION, EXTENT, BOUNDS
and DIVISION, CLIMATE, SOIL and PRODUCE; their LAKES, RIVERS, MOUNTAINS,
CITIES, principal TOWNS, HARBOURS, BUILDINGS, &c. and the gradual Alterations that
from Time to Time have happened in each:

ALSO THE

M A N N E R S and C U S T O M S

OF THE

Several INHABITANTS; their RELIGION and GOVERNMENT, ARTS and SCIENCES,
TRADES and MANUFACTURES:

So as to form

A Complete SYSTEM of MODERN GEOGRAPHY and
HISTORY, exhibiting the Present STATE of all NATIONS;

Illustrated not only with

CHARTS of the several Divisions of the Ocean, and MAPS of each Country, entirely new
Composed, as well as new Engraved, by the best Hands, from the latest Surveys, Discoveries, and Astrono-
mical Observations: But likewise with Variety of Plans, and Prospects of Coasts, Harbours, and Cities; be-
sides CUTS representing Antiquities, Animals, Vegetables, the Persons and Habits of the People, and
other Curiosities: Selected from the most Authentic Travellers, Foreign as well as English.

Published by his MAJESTY's Authority.

V O L. IV.

L O N D O N:

Printed for THOMAS ASTLEY, in *Pater-Noster-Row*. M^{DC}CXLVII.



By the LORDS JUSTICES.

HARDWICKE, G. | ARGYLE,
GRAFTON, | TWEEDDALE.

To all to whom these Presents shall come, Greeting,

WHEREAS THOMAS ASTLEY, of the City of London, Bookseller, hath humbly represented unto Us, That he hath been at a very great Expence and Charge in purchasing several new *English* Manuscripts of Voyages and Travels, and in Translating divers other Books of Voyages and Travels, out of several Languages, into *English*, and in Engraving Maps and other Plates for the same, intending to Print a New General Collection of the said

VOYAGES and TRAVELS,

In several Volumes in Quarto, Improved with CHARTS of the several Divisions of the Ocean, and entire new MAPS of each Country; also select CUTS, representing Cities, Antiquities, Animals, Vegetables, the Habits of the People, and other Things remarkable in their Kind; with new Discourses and Observations thereupon; which Work may be of great Advantage, as well to Trade as Navigation; and he having humbly besought Us to grant to him, the said Thomas Astley,

His MAJESTY's Royal Privilege and Licence,

For the sole Printing and Publishing the same for the Term of fourteen Years; we being inclined to encourage

An UNDERTAKING of such Publick Use and Benefit,

Are pleased to condescend to his Request, and do by these Presents, in his MAJESTY's Name, (as far as may be agreeable to the Statute in that Case made and provided) grant unto the said *Thomas Astley*, his Heirs, Executors, Administrators, and Assigns,

HIS MAJESTY's ROYAL PRIVILEGE and LICENCE,

For the sole Printing, Publishing, and Vending the said Work, during the Term of Fourteen Years, to be computed from the Day of the Date hereof, strictly forbidding and prohibiting all his Majesty's Subjects, within his Kingdoms and Dominions, to Re-print or Abridge the same, or any Part of them, either in the like, or any other Volume or Volumes whatsoever; or to Copy or Counterfeit the Sculptures or Maps thereof, either in Great or in Small, during the said Term; or to Import, Buy, Vend, Utter, or Distribute, any Copies of the same, or any Part thereof, Re-printed beyond the Seas, within the said Term, without the Consent of the said *Thomas Astley*, his Heirs, Executors, Administrators, or Assigns, by Writing under his or their Hands and Seals, first had and obtained, as they will answer the Contrary at their Peril; whereof the Commissioners and other Officers of His Majesty's Customs, the Master, Wardens, and Company of Stationers are to take Notice, that due Obedience be rendered to this His Majesty's Pleasure herein declared.

Given at Whitehall, the 18th Day of October, 1743, in the Seventeenth Year of his Majesty's Reign,

By their Excellencies Command,

F. WESTON.

TO THE
RIGHT HONOURABLE
PHILIP-DORMER,
EARL of CHESTERFIELD,

One of his MAJESTY'S Principal Secretaries of State, &c. &c.

MY LORD,

ALTHOUGH the Honour which the Chancellor of *France* has done this Work, by ordering it to be translated into *French*, and promoting it with uncommon Exertions of his Power, should be no Evidence of its Merit: Yet it is hoped, the Notice taken of it by that great Personage, will apologize for the Author, if, to put himself on an Equality with his Translator, and make the Original appear in *Great Britain* with no less Lustre than the Version does in *France* and *Holland*, he presumes to dedicate this Volume to a great Minister, and Patron of the Sciences, in his own Country, who is himself learned, as well as a Judge of Literature. I am,

My LORD,

Your LORDSHIP'S

Most humble Servant,

The COLLECTOR.

ADDITIONAL LIST of SUBSCRIBERS.

SIR John Colleton, of Exmouth, Bart:
 Sir Henry Grey, Bart.
 William Watts, of Leicester, Esq;
 Robert-Henley Ongley, of Old-Warden, Bedfordshire, Esq;
 Mr. John Gasper Vancouver.
 Mr. John Chandler, F. R. S.
 Mr. Jonathan Ewer, of Hatton-Garden.
 Mr. John Harper, Junior.
 Mr. William Barnet, of St. George Hanover-Square.
 Mr. Arthur Venables.
 Mr. William Hempson, of Leghorn.
 Mr. Joseph Pinfold, of Leghorn.
 Mr. Whistler, of Coventry.
 Mr. Watts, of Coventry.
 Mr. Hollyer, of Coventry.
 Mr. Paton, Bookseller, in Edinburgh.
 Messieurs Hamilton and Balfour, Booksellers, in Edinburgh.
 Mr. Jonathan Moore, Bookseller, at Newport in the Isle of Wight, 12 Sets.
 Reverend Mr. William Langbaine.
 Mr. Moses Longman.
 Mr. Rigg, Timber-Merchant, Vaux-Hall;
 — Stark, of Ewell in Surrey, Esq;
 Mr. William Comyns.
 Mr. Joseph Jones.
 Peregrine Bertie, Esq;
 Dr. Wright, of Baldock, Hertfordshire.
 Edward Withers, Bookseller, Fleet street.
 Richard Baldwin, jun. Bookseller, in Pater-Noster-Row.
 Mr. Richard Windsor.
 Capt. Charles Fowles.
 Capt. John Somner.
 Mr. Willoughby Clay.
 Mr. George Pitzold.
 William Meadows, Bookseller, in Cornhill.
 Mr. Nicholas Scott.

T H E

P R E F A C E.

THE present Volume consists of three Books. The first exhibits a Geographical Description of China; which, with the last Book of the former Volume, containing the Voyages and Travels to that great Country, comprizes all that is to be met-with of any Worth in the several Authors who have hitherto treated of it; particularly the late Observations of the Jesuit-Missioners, who surveyed the whole Empire and made the Maps, of which we have inserted general ones to illustrate the Subject.

It is wished for Connexion Sake, that both the Books relating to this famous Part of Asia could have found a Place in the same Volume; but that was impracticable, without swelling one of them abundantly out of Size. However, this is an Inconvenience which affects only the Form or Division of the Volumes, without in the least disturbing the Arrangement of the Parts, or breaking into the Order of our Plan.

THE second Book comprizes the Description and History of Korea, Great Tartary, Tibet, Karazm, and the two Bukharias; Countries but little known in Europe, till the Authors, whose voluminous Works we have reduced to moderate Bounds, lately appeared. With regard to Korea, the Public are obliged to the same Jesuits who surveyed China, for the curious Map and Relation of that Country; before which we had no tolerable Account of it, excepting those few and imperfect Remarks to be found in the Narrative of the Dutch Shipwreck on the Island of Quelpaert.

FROM this Country so much resembling China, as well in its Improvements as the Manners and Customs of the Natives, we pass into its Reverse in those Respects, Great Tartary; proceeding gradually from the most Eastern Shores of it, Westward to the Caspian Sea. In this Part an Account is given not only of the Inhabitants, as they are at present, but also of their ancient State and Conquests under the famous Jenghiz Khān: Whose Life we have annexed, as given both by the Tartar and Chinese Authors, who supply the Defects of each other. This we have done chiefly for Sake of the great Light which is thrown by those curious Memoirs on the History and Geography of all the middle Part of Asia, delivered as well in the Writings of the Oriental Historians, as in those of our Western Missioners and other Travellers sent into those Parts in the thirteenth and fourteenth Centuries.

IN the Chapter relating to Tibet, particular Care has been taken to bring together all that could be found in Authors concerning that surprizing Imposture of the Great Lama (who passes for a real God on Earth) and his idolatrous Religion; which within these few Centuries, and apparently without the Assistance of Force, has overspread near one Half of Asia.

FROM Tibet we pass-over to Karazm, an ancient Kingdom on the Eastern Shore of the Caspian Sea; and thence proceeding Eastward, describe the Great and Little Bukharia; which last terminates at the narrow Desert, bounding China on the North West: The two first are possessed by the Uzbek-Tartars, Mohammedans (whose History written by their late Kān is there abridged) and the last by the Eluths, nicknamed Kalnūks. These are Worshipers of the Great Lama, or Deity of Tibet, and hold in subjection the Mohammedan Inhabitants, who are of the same Nation with themselves, that is, Mongols, though of a very different Religion.

The PREFACE.

Travels in
these Coun-
tries.

THE third Book contains all the Travels to be met-with through Great Tartary, Karazm, the Bukharians, and Tibet, from the Time of Jenghiz Khân; which may be reckoned the *Era* of modern Discoveries, two Centuries before the West and East-Indies were explored by Sea. The Conquests of that great Ravager of Countries, and his immediate Successors, which alarmed all the World, and opened the Way into Tartary, excited the European, as well as Asiatic Princes, to dispatch their Ambassadors into those wild, and till then impenetrable, Deserts, to treat of Peace, and form Alliances. In these Expeditions, none were more forward than the Popes in sending their Missioners, with a View both to stir-up the Tartars against the Mohammedan Princes, and to propagate the Romish Religion among them. Although their Zeal was not attended with the desired Effect, yet to it we owe some curious Journals; which, though full of Fables and Superstitions, will always be valuable for giving Europeans the first tolerable Idea they had of Tartary, and its various Inhabitants.

By Friar
Rubruquis,

AMONG the Travels which compose this Book, the most remarkable are those of Rubruquis, Polo the Venetian, the Ambassadors of Shâh Rukh, and Gerbillon. The first, besides giving a pretty exact Account of the Manners and Customs of the Mongols, or Tartars, with several curious Particulars relating to the Khâns, and their Court, not to be met-with anywhere else, let us into the Proceedings of the Nestorian, and other Missioners; who had for many Ages abused Christendom with their pretended Conversions in these Parts of Asia, their Miracles, Prester John's, and other Impostures.

Marco Polo,

THE Travels of Polo is one of the most valuable Works of the Kind now in being: For although the Remarks which they contain of Countries are generally very superficial, and they abound with Fables, as well as those of Rubruquis and the other Friars; yet you find there some Account of all the Coasts and Islands from Madaigaskar to Japan, discovered by Sea by the Portuguese, besides the inland Parts of China and Tartary, with many others where they never penetrated, till the Jesuits entered China in 1552. The worst of it is, that great Part of the Geography of this Author was become so obscure, owing chiefly to his employing the Names used by Foreigners, instead of those current in the respective Countries, that it was of little Service to us Moderns: However, by Help of the Relations of Magalhaens, Gaubil, and other Authors quoted in the Life of Jenghiz Khân, we have in good Measure supplied the Defect, and rendered him intelligible.

Shâh Rukh's
Ambassa-
dors,

THE Embassy of Shâh Rukh, Successor of Timûr beg, or Tamerlan, to the Emperor of China, has contributed somewhat to the same End. This Narrative, written originally in Persian, and now first translated into English, besides the Improvements it affords to Geography and History, furnishes us with a Sample of the Asiatic Taste and Manner of writing Travels.

Gerbillon the
Jesuit.

AS for those of Gerbillon through the Territories of the Mongols and Kalkas, which include the great Desert of Tartary, they are so full and particular, as to leave scarce any Thing for future Travellers to add, touching either the Country itself, or the Manners and Customs of its Inhabitants.

Maps and
Cuts.

FOR the farther illustration of the Whole, Variety of Maps, as well as Cuts, are added; the latter selected from the Authors here collected. The Maps are accommodated both to the Descriptions and Travels. We have attempted even to adapt some to the History of Jenghiz Khân, and Relation of Polo, as far as concerns Tartary and China, in order to exhibit in some Measure the State of Countries in those Times. M. D'Anville's general Map of Tartary, as given by the Translator of Du Halde, being exhibited by a proper Scale, and more agreeable to the larger Draughts of the Jesuits, than his other Maps, has served for the Ground-work of most of ours. However, we have made several considerable Alterations where we found necessary, particularly in the Maps of Western Tartary and Karazm. We have likewise drawn the Meridians through different Places, in order to extend the Country from West to East, which he had too much contracted in his Maps, in Consequence of adopting the Notion of the prolate Figure of the Earth.

The PREFACE.

vii

Condition of
the Work.

THIS may suffice to give the Reader a general View of what is offered him in this fourth Volume; and it is presumed the Perusal will convince him that the Collector has performed his Promise to improve the Work as it advanced. However, he is sorry to find that this Conduct of his did not better the Sale, or remove the Prejudices conceived very early against it, from the virulent Aspersions thrown-on it by one Rival in Trade (it is the Proprietor who now speaks) and the almost-united Interest of the rest. He hopes, nevertheless, that those Prejudices will now subside; and that the Bookseller will find his Account in the Sale of the Whole, which he could not do in that of the Parts. In short, although the Author has but little Interest farther in the Volumes which are already published, he cannot forbear observing, that it would be Matter of real Mortification to him, if, after all the Pains he has taken, he should find his Performance to prove less acceptable to his Countrymen, than it appears to be to Foreigners.

French Edi-
tions

THE first Volume was scarcely finished, when an Advertisement came-out in the Amsterdam Gazette, intimating, that M. Didot, Bookseller at Paris, intended to give a Translation of the Whole in French, pursuant to the Order of Monseigneur the Chancellor, by publishing one Volume in Quarto* every six Months. Accordingly at the Time prefixed a Volume was published, by which it appeared that the Editor was M. Antoine François Prevost, (Chaplain to the Prince of Conti) whose Print is at the Head of the Book.

At Paris,

IT must be owned, that no Cost has been spared to make this Edition beautiful: Some Cuts and new Charts also have been added: But the Abbé has taken several Liberties with the Original, which it is presumed will hardly be allowed a Person who undertakes to give a Translation of another Body's Work: For he has not only omitted a great Number of Passages and Paragraphs of Moment in the Text, besides Abundance of Notes which have no Relation to Religion; but hath added both Text and Notes in very many Places, without distinguishing such Alterations by any Kind of Mark, or Reference, and often blending them so with the Original, as not to be easily separated; by which Means the Collector is made to father a great deal of spurious Issue, and liable to be blamed for the Faults of another, as well as his own. There are likewise many Places to be found, wherein the Abbé has so far mistaken the Sense of the Original, as to make it speak directly contrary to the Meaning of the Author.

And the
Hague,

THE Reputation of the Work must have suffered in some Measure by the Paris Impression, if M. Pierre du Hondt at the Hague had not determined to publish a complete Translation of it; wherein are marked, with great Exactness, all the Omissions, Additions, and Mistranslations to be found in Abbé Prevost's Edition. M. Du Hondt had likewise the Courtesy, as soon as his two first Volumes (which make but one in the English) were printed, to send a Copy of them to the Collector as a Present, accompanied with a very polite Letter, setting forth the Care he had taken to restore the Work to its original State: A Conduct which requires proper Acknowledgments from an Author to a Bookseller; who might, according to Custom, have found his Account in publishing the French Translation as it was, without putting himself to the Expence either of having its Deficiencies supplied, or its Errors corrected.

State of the
Sciences

WHETHER Abbé Prevost hath so profited by the Hague Edition, as either to give a full Translation in his succeeding Volumes, or mark his Additions and Omissions therein, I know not, as having seen none of them. But whatever Errors may be committed by the Translator, his Mistakes ought never to derogate from the Honour due to the Chancellor, for setting on-foot the Translation of a Book which he judged might be of some Use to Trade and Navigation. In this he seems to have been so intent that, as the Abbé observes at the End of his Preface, having pitched on him to translate the Work, he took-Care that the War should not interrupt his Correspondence with England, for procuring the Numbers as fast as they came from the Press.

Abroad and
at home.

ON this Occasion, I cannot but take Notice of the different Regard paid of late Years to the Sciences in France, and in South Britain: For it often happens, that while the great Men there are shewing the highest Respect to our English Books of any Use, the great Men here treat

them

Two of his Volumes make but one of ours, so that the Whole in French will consist of 8 Volumes.

The PREFACE.

them with the utmost Neglect, and their Authors with the highest Contempt. In like Manner we have seen Instances, that while the Public in France and Holland receive with Eagerness our English Productions, they are under a Necessity of being dropped at home for Want of Encouragement to carry them on. This, however, we say with all Deference imaginable to those of our Subscribers who have assisted us so far, and have shewn as much Perseverance, Benevolence, and Indulgence for the Performance, as any Foreigners could possibly have done.

BUT, however well satisfied the Collector may be with the Reception given his Work by the French in general, he has Reason to complain of those concerned in preparing the Edition of it. He has already mentioned the Injury done him by the Translator, perhaps from a Licence customary in France; and is next to take-Notice of the Treatment he has received from one of his Assistants.

M. Bellin's
Objections.

ABBE PREVOST having committed the Care of preparing the Charts and Plans to M. Bellin, Engineer of the Marine, and Keeper of the Royal Office for depositing the Charts, Plans, and Journals within that Department; there is prefixed to the second Volume a Letter from that Gentleman to the Abbé, giving an Account of the Progress he has made in the Execution. In this Letter, M. Bellin is pleased to throw-out some hasty Reflexions on the Charts and Plans inserted in our Collection, without seeming to have duly considered the Case. His Animadversions relate to three Articles: Want of proper Disposition, Want of sufficient Number, and Want of Accuracy.

Answer to
the first.

WITH regard to the Distribution of the Charts, I must first observe, that at the same time he finds Fault with the Order they are placed in, he seems to own that he could not put them in much better himself. But the Fault lay properly in his own Inattention to Things. He was not to have considered them as belonging to the Numbers in which they were published; but should have looked into the Table of Directions to the Book-binder, at the End of my first Volume, where he might have found the proper Places marked: He might there also have found, that I had anticipated him in his Advice to throw the Charts together at the End of the Volume, as most convenient for perusing them.

To the second.

I intended to have added several Charts more of the Coasts to those inserted in the first Volume; but being prevented by the sudden Change I was obliged to make in my Plan, deferred giving them till I came to treat of the East-Indies; which, if the Work goes-on, follow next in Order. This is the Defect under the second Article which M. Bellin finds Fault with, and which he has supplied by five Charts; comprizing in that Number all the Coasts of India and China, with the adjacent Islands, from Cape Komorin, where our Charts end, to Japan inclusively.

To the third.

AN Author may digest the Charges which at most tax him with Neglect: But those which accuse him of great Inaccuracy, or Error in his Work, strike at his Reputation, and call for his best Defence. With regard to this last Article, M. Bellin says, that my Charts and Plans are taken from this Place and the other, without much Choice. I acknowledge the first Part of this Charge, but deny the latter: For I made Choice of the best I could procure. Himself, I hope, will vouch for me, so far as relates to the seven Charts above-mentioned; which, he says, are taken from his Charts published some Years ago, for the Use of the King's Ships. If so, how came he to alter those of the Western Coast of Africa throughout? Did his own stand in so-much Need of correcting? Or did he find mine in so-many Particulars different from his own? If the former, why so ready to carp at mine? If the latter, why does he insinuate that they were wholly taken from his? The Truth is, that M. Bellin's Charts being ready to my Hand, and the Scale of a proper Size, I made Use of them for the Ground-work, in the same Manner as I have done M. D'Anville's general Map: But far from taking the Whole from him, or copying them implicitly, I examined his Charts by the Astronomical Observations, and altered them in many Places by other Charts and Plans, as mentioned in the particular Charts themselves. And this I was the less scrupulous to do, as

Cavils at
the Charts

The PREFACE.

ix

I found the Coasts of Guinea, from Sierra Leona to Benin, represented in his Chart of the Southern-Ocean very differently from what it is in that of the Western-Ocean, published but the Year before^a. What his Alterations are, I know not, having not seen the Paris Edition: But if he altered mine, the Dutch Editors altered his; and in case they have followed good Authorities, he must have altered my Charts for the worse, since I find scarce any Difference betwixt theirs and mine.

HOWEVER that be, I am surprized M. Bellin has found no Fault with the other Charts of the Coasts, from the Cape of Good Hope to that of Komorin, although there are rather more Alterations from his^b in them than the former. Are my Charts more correct than his for that Extent? Or are there in the Marine-Office no Charts within that Compass fit to be relied on? This last, in Effect, happens to be the Case, with regard to the whole Eastern-Coast of Africa, from the Cape of Good Hope to Cape Guardafui, which he owns to be taken from the English Pilots^c: Yet, in my Charts of that Coast, I make M. Bellin the chief Compliment, referring expressly to none but his Chart. If he should say, I had Reason, because, although by his Marine-Journals he found them exact in many Parts, yet in others they stood in Need of Correction, why then does he claim my Charts as his own? especially too as he makes no Scruple to ascribe my Collection of Voyages and Travels to M. Prevost^d; possibly on Account of the Alterations he has made above-mentioned, or merely, perhaps, for translating them.

WITH regard to the lesser Charts, he finds great Fault with those I have given of Teneriffe and Madera. I gave them as I found them in our English Pilots, without warranting them. If he has produced better, he may thank his Situation at the Marine-Office, that hath afforded him Helps which, he says, no Person before him ever had, and with which, he owns, any-body else might have succeeded as well as himself^e. Will he then blame an Author for not giving what he could not come-at, or none had Recourse to but M. Bellin? Neither need he vaunt, if his Plan of the City and Road of St. Jago is better than that I have taken from Dampier: Could he himself have produced a better, before he got his from the French Engineer^f? The like Question may be asked with regard to his Plan of the Isle of Goree, and its Fortifications, which was communicated to him by the Directors of the India Company. After all, what are his two or three Plans in Comparison of the many produced by me, far superior to any Thing it was in his Power to produce? However, I do not blame M. Bellin for letting our Draughts stand, to shew the Difference between his and them, or the Necessity there was, that he should not copy us blindly.

M. BELLIN has added two other Charts, one of the Isle of Arguin, and the adjacent Coast^g: The other of the Canary Isles; which last, he says, is drawn from a prodigious Number of Remarks, and different from all former Charts^h. With regard to these, he tells M. Prevost, that he would be astonished at the Errors into which the Authors of them have fallen. Among the rest he alledges, that they place Palma and Gomera fourteen Leagues asunder, instead of eight or nine at mostⁱ. This, no Doubt, is a very great Error: But if in the Number of former Charts, he includes ours of the Western-Coast of Africa, which in that Part (depending on the Accuracy of him and his Materials) is copied from his of the Western-Ocean, it is a Critique on himself: For he there makes the Distance above twenty Leagues. It is not so astonishing, that M. Bellin should fall into so gross a Mistake, as that after such a Mistake he should be astonished at the Mistakes of others; who, in this Particular, had not erred near so much as himself.

VOL. 4.

b

M.

^a In 1739. ^b The Chart here meant is that of the Eastern-Ocean, including the Coasts from the Cape of Good Hope to Kanton in China, with the adjacent Islands. ^c See his Observations sur la Construction de la carte de l'Océan oriental. 1740. ^d Lett. p. 3. His Words are, Dans le second volume de votre Recueil des voyages. ^e Ibid. p. 3. ^f Ibid. p. 8. ^g Ibid. p. 7. ^h Ibid. p. 6. ⁱ Ibid. p. 7.

The PREFACE.

Uncandid
Reflexion.

M. BELLIN says, he has made many Alterations in our Chart of the Cape-Verde Islands, and drawn that of the Course of the Sanaga, or Senegal, de novo. I should be glad to see them corrected, if requisite, were they my own Surveys: But think he does not act candidly in saying, that the last, which he acknowledges to be taken from one published by Labat, is not well executed by the English, without assigning his Reasons. As this is an exact Copy elegantly engraved from the Draught of that River, surveyed by a French Engineer, and given by M. D'Anville above-mentioned (eminent for his Skill in the Science) with only the Addition of a Scale, and the Bounds of the neighbouring Countries, the Charge is the more surprizing. Would M. Bellin out of Prejudice, or a Disposition to find Fault, represent us as not having the Skill even to copy a Chart? If that be the Case, we must be wretched Bunglers indeed! Or did M. Bellin condemn our Performance to excuse that of his Countryman; whose Name being in the Title of the Chart, he ought to have mentioned instead of Labat's? Even in this Case it is a flagrant Instance of Partiality to the supposed Society of English Authors, without any Token of Friendship in Reality to M. D'Anville, whom in Effect he wounds through their Sides.

His Charts
examined,

Differ from
each other.

HAVING gone through M. Bellin's Censures, it might, in my Turn, be allowed me to criticise his Performances; but as I have yet seen no more than Copies of his five additional Charts, which are inserted in the second Volume of the Hague Edition, I can speak at present only to them. With Regard to these Charts, which he says were drawn with all possible Care, and the Situation of many Places settled by actual Observations^a, I must observe, first, that they differ in an infinite Number of Places from his Chart of the Oriental Ocean, both as to the Figure and Extent of the Parts. I am far from thinking this great Variation from himself any Discredit to M. Bellin, since new Discoveries make Alterations necessary: On the contrary, I always condemned the Practice of Nicholas Sanson, who, we are told, would not correct his Maps, though labouring under the grossest Errors, for sake of preserving Uniformity^b. But as it may be presumed he will grant, that his Chart of the Eastern-Ocean must be very faulty in case his new Charts be correct, I hope it will induce him to think, that a Chart may be very faulty, and yet the Hydrographer not at all liable to Blame. For, indeed, all that can be expected from an Author, is to make Use of the best Materials to be had; and while he does that, he effectually secures himself from Censure, however faulty his Productions may prove to be.

That of
the China
Coasts

Very erro-
neous.

ON this Principle, methinks, M. Bellin should have been more favourable to me, whatever he was to my Charts or Plans: And even with Regard to them, before he was determined to censure any of my Performances, he ought to have been sure that his own were unexceptionable: But notwithstanding his Readiness to find Fault with mine, and the extraordinary Opinion he seems to have of his own, I will venture to say, that the worst of my Charts is better than the last of his supplemental Charts, wherein the Coasts of China, and Korea, are exhibited in a most deformed Manner. So far from being executed with all possible Care, or the Situations settled by actual Observations, that not the least Propriety is observed as to the Figure of the Parts, or Longitude of Places, except those of Kanton and Pe-king. The Space between Pe-king, and the most Eastern Shores of Korea (which seems to be turned the wrong Way in his Chart) is contracted above three Degrees in fourteen more than it should be, and the intermediate Seas in Proportion. In short, with Regard to this Chart at least, it might justly be said, that M. Bellin took his Materials from this Place and the other, without much Choice: For although he does not name his Authorities, yet by comparing it with the Map of China and Korea, at the Head of this Volume, it will appear to be a very inaccurate or random Eye-Draught of the Jesuits Maps, with respect to the Coasts of those two Countries, altered for the worse throughout, from other Quarters.

FOR

^a Lett. p. 6.

^b See Mem. pour servir Hist. des Hom. illust. vol. 10. p. 13, & seqq.

The PREFACE.

xi

FOR Instance, the Island of Chu-shan ^a, which, in their Map of Che-kyang, lies with-
 out the Bay of Hang-chew, near the Coast on the South-Side, in thirty Degrees of Latitude,
 is placed in his a Degree higher on the North-Side of the Bay. Could M. Bellin think the
 coarse Measures, or Estimations of Mariners were more to be depended on than actual Sur-
 veys, and Situations determined by Astronomers? Could he think the late Observations of the
 Jesuits on the Coast of China less accurate than the unverified Observation of the Jesuit Spi-
 nola above an hundred and thirty Years ago, for the Longitude of Nanga-saki ^b, by which he
 seems to have regulated his Chart? In case he did, ought he not to have marked that Place at
 least, to apologize for his dissenting so-widely from those Missioners? Whatever his Opinion
 may be in these Respects, the Chart in Question is a Proof, that the Draughts found in the
 Royal Office are not sufficient to produce accurate Charts: For surely so-bad a Chart could
 never have come from the Hands of M. Bellin, if he was really in Possession of such Helps
 as none before him ever had. I, who do not pretend to such extraordinary Advantages,
 would yet engage to draw a far more correct one.

IN short, the chief Thing M. Bellin seems to have had in View by this Chart, was to in-
 troduce the Island of Japan; which is copied from a larger of his own Drawing ^c, published ^{Design of}
 in Charlevoix's History of that Country. In this Part M. Bellin has taken more Pains than ^{that Chart.}
 usual, or even necessary, exhibiting the inland Mountains, as well as the Places along the
 Coast, in some Detail; while the rest of the Chart is but barren of Names, as if some desert
 Coast was represented. It is Pity the Dutch Editor or Editors were not as kind to this Chart
 of his, by supplying that Defect, as they say they have been to the rest ^d.

IT has ever been a Custom with me in drawing Maps or Charts, to mark with Lines under the ^{Want Uni-}
 Names, such Places whose Situations had been determined by Astronomers. M. Bellin has done ^{formity.}
 the same by Stars and Crosses, in his large Charts of the several Oceans: But in his five ad-
 ditional Charts, as if determined to be defective rather than agree with me, he has not marked
 one out of the many he talks of, except that of Pondicherry, the chief French Settlement in
 the East-Indies. In Consequence of this Omission, they are destitute of that Authority which
 ought always to accompany such Productions; and want the Uniformity which, in my Opinion,
 ought to be kept-up in respect of mine. May it not be said, on this Occasion, that his Charts
 are not well executed? However, it must be confessed, it would have been worse to have
 marked Places as laid down from Observations, which were in reality inserted at random.

I cannot be blamed, I presume, for this small Critique, even by Mr. Bellin himself, after ^{Apology for}
 having treated me so severely, when, perhaps, my greatest Fault was only in copying too-much ^{this Critique}
 after him. However this be, I must do my Antagonist the Justice to own, that I think the
 Public is in the main much indebted to him for his hydrographical Performances; and shall for
 the future acknowledge the Obligation, whenever I take from him, as readily as I have hitherto
 done. I have only farther to acquaint him, that he has but a single Person to deal with, and
 not several; as by always using the Words the English, and the English Authors, both he
 and Abbé Prevost would persuade themselves, or rather their Readers: For although in my
 Prefaces, according to a common Custom, I generally speak in the first Person plural, yet I
 sometimes use the first or third Person singular; as in that to the first Volume, and frequently
 in the Work itself, particularly in the last two or three Paragraphs of my Introduction

FOR all this, M. Prevost, with what View, or upon what Authority I cannot imagine, not ^{The Author}
 only represents me as a Kind of Secretary to a Society of Collectors, whose Copy I revise and si-^{misrepre-}
 the Press; but what is still more surprizing, makes me declare the same myself, in a Paragraph, ^{mented}

b 2

which

On the Eastern Coast of China, where the English had for some Time a Factory. ^b He
 found it one Hour, or fifteen Degrees, more East than Ma-kau, near Kanton, in China. ^c The
 Foundation of it seems to be Kempfer's. ^d We must take Notice here, that, according to them,
 the Animal of which we have given the Print, vol. 2. p. 348, is not the Buffalo, but the Urok.
 See their Preface.

The PREFACE.

which he has added as mine to the End of the Introduction, in the following Words, "I give no farther Account of my Plan, because at the Head of each Part of the Work I shall take care to explain my Design by other Introductions. The Undertaking is of great Importance, surpassing, without doubt, the Abilities of a single Author; and the many Attempts of the same Kind, which to this present remain unfinished, sufficiently evince the Difficulties to be encountered with: But I hope for more Success, with the Helps which I employ to surmount them. A Society of laborious Gentlemen, to whom I only lend my Pen, and who have the Eyes of a very judicious Nation upon them, will be responsible to me for the Order and Fidelity of the Materials; and I dare engage they shall not suffer from any Alterations I shall make in their Style: Depending moreover on the Indulgence of the Public towards a Scheme, the Execution of which has been long wished for, I enter upon the Work with that Confidence, which a Person ought to have in his Subject, when Utility is united with Entertainment; and from the good Inclination of his Readers, when convinced that nothing has been spared both to instruct and please them."

By Abbé Prevost.
The Matter of Fact.

WITHOUT making any farther Reflexions on a Kind of Conduct that would be deemed very unwarrantable on this Side of the Water, I shall only beg Leave to set Abbé Prevost right in his Mistake, by informing him, that a single Person projected and executed the Plan so far as hath been published of it: That he had no Partner in it, nor was any Way assisted farther than by the Persons whom he employed to extract Materials as he directed: That this Course held only with regard to the two first Volumes; and that the two last, which he reckons the most compleat and difficult Part of the Work now finished, were performed with the Help only of an Amanuensis.

ALL the Amends I shall desire of M. Prevost is, that as he has given my spurious Confession, he will also give my genuine Retraction; and that as he has published M. Bellin's Reflexions, he will also publish my Defence: That in these two Respects at least I shall find the Paris Edition as just to me, as I make no doubt I shall find the Edition of the Hague; and that for the future he will not give his own Sense of Things for mine.

Apology for changing

IT may be presumed, that enough has been already said in the Preface to the second Volume, to satisfy such of our Subscribers as might have expected, in these four Volumes, a Collection of Voyages and Travels to all Countries throughout the Globe. This was, indeed, the first Proposal: But many Gentlemen fearing, from the narrow Bounds allowed to our Materials, that several Authors of Value would be left-out, and others too-much contracted; apprehending likewise, from the many Numbers of the first Volume published without any Maps or Prints, that the Work would be defective in those Respects; for these Reasons they applied to us in-time, to give them, in the proposed Number of Volumes, the compleat Substance of all the best Authors, with the proper Accompaniments, to a few Parts of the World, rather than imperfect Abstracts of a few to all Parts, as had been done in some former Collections, which for that Reason were in no Esteem with Persons of Discernment and Taste.

Our first Plan.

THIS Course, they judged, would be most agreeable to the Generality of Subscribers, as well as themselves; and, in Effect, it seems to have been the Case: For, upon altering our Scheme, we not only met-with very few Complaints, but, on the contrary, received many Letters approving of our Performance, and exhorting us to persevere in the new Method. Should there still be any who are offended at the Change of Measures, it is hoped they will consider, that if we have not punctually answered their Expectation one Way, we have made them ample Amends the other, by giving more complete Descriptions of Countries, and a much-greater Number of Maps, Plans, and Cuts, than could have been the Case had we pursued our first Design.

* Introd. p. 36, Hague Edit.

London, October 1,
1747.

THE

T H E C O N T E N T S.

B O O K I.

<i>A</i> Description of China; containing the Geography, with the civil and natural History.	Page 1.
CHAP. I. A geographical Description of China.	4.
CHAP. II. The Qualities, Manners, and Customs of the Chinese.	73.
CHAP. III. An Account of the several Classes, into which the People of China are divided.	111.
CHAP. IV. Chinese Learning, &c.	163.
CHAP. V. The Religions of China.	201.
CHAP. VI. The Constitution and Government of China.	235.
CHAP. VII. The Natural History.	288.

B O O K II.

<i>A</i> Description of Korea, Eastern Tartary, and Tibet.	319.
CHAP. I. Geographical Observations, and History of Korea. By Jean-Baptiste Regis, Jesuit.	ibid.
CHAP. II. Travels of some Dutchmen in Korea; with an Account of the Country, and their Shipwreck on the Island of Quelpaert. By Henry Hamel. Translated from the French.	329.
CHAP. III. A Description of Tartary, subject to China.	348.
CHAP. IV. A Description of Tibet, or Tibbet.	449.
CHAP. V. A Description of the Kingdom of Karazm.	476.
CHAP. VI. A Description of Great Bukharia.	514.
CHAP. VII. A Description of Little Bukharia, or the Kingdom of Kâshgar.	526.
CHAP. VIII. A Description of the Country of Turkestan.	536.

B O O K III.

<i>T</i> RAVELS through Tartary, Tibet, and Bukharia, to and from China.	542.
CHAP. I. The Travels of John de Plano Carpini, and other Friars, into Tartary, in the Year 1246.	544.
CHAP. II. The Travels of Friar William de Rubruquis, into the Eastern Parts of the World, in the Year 1253.	552.
CHAP. III. The Travels of Marco Polo, or Mark Paul, the Venetian, into Tartary, in 1272.	580.
CHAP. IV. The Embassy of Shâh Rokh, Son of Tamerlan, and other Princes, to the Emperor of Katay, or China, in 1419. Translated from the Persian into French, and now first done into English.	620.
CHAP. V. The Voyage and Travels of Mr. Anthony Jenkinson, from Russia, to Boghâr, or Bokhara, in 1557. To which are added, some Informations of others, concerning the Road thence to Katay, or China.	630.
CHAP. VI. The Travels of Benediçt Goëz, a Portuguese Jesuit, from Lahor in the Mogol's Empire, to China, in 1602.	642.
CHAP. VII. Travels through Tibet, to and from China. By several Missioners.	649.
CHAP. VIII. Travels into Western Tartary, by Order of the Emperor of China, or in his Retinue, between the Years 1688, and 1698. By John Francis Gerbillon, Jesuit.	664.

*A List of the PLATES in the Fourth VOLUME, with Directions
for placing them.*

N ^o	Plate		To face
		Page	
	FRONTISPIECE		
118.	I.	Temple of <i>Quang-qua-myau</i>	27
	II.	Village of <i>Kya-kya</i>	50
119.	III.	The supreme Hall of Audience	13
120.	IV.	Different Kinds of Boats	415
		Serpent, or Dragon-Bark	
	V.	Floating Village	416
		City of <i>Pay-hyen</i> , with its Windmills	
121.	VI.	<i>Chinese</i> Ladies	77
	VII.	Plan of <i>Nan-king</i> , and <i>Su-chew fü</i>	26
122.	VIII.	A Tartar Lady, and other Females	77
	IX.	Plans of <i>Vu-fü hyen</i> , and <i>Hü-chew fü</i>	41
123.	X.	A Chart of the Bay of <i>Cbin-chew</i> in <i>China</i>	34
	XI.	The <i>Lou-wa</i> , or Fishing-Bird, with the Manner of Fishing	137
124.	XII.	The Procession of a Bride going home to her Husband	88
125.	XIII.	The Flying-Bridge	110
126.	XIV.	<i>Fü-chew fü</i> , Capital of <i>Fo-hyen</i>	33
127.	XV.	A Map of <i>China</i> , <i>Korea</i> , and the adjoining Parts of <i>Tartary</i>	1
128.	XVI.	Plans of Cities of <i>Hü-quang</i>	45
	XVII.	The Mountain of the five Horse-Heads	59
129.	XVIII.	A <i>Chinese</i> Funeral	91
130.	XIX.	The Observatory of <i>Pe-king</i>	9
	XX.	The great Imperial-Throne	14
131.	XXI.	Town of <i>Yo-fü-wo</i>	23
	XXII.	Plans of <i>Lun-chew</i> , <i>Kan-chew</i> , and <i>Cbin-ywen fü</i>	68
132.	XXIII.	The Fortrefs of <i>Tyen-tsing-wei</i>	23
	XXIV.	Plans of <i>Si-ngan fü</i> , and <i>Chwang-lan</i>	53
133.	XXV.	Silk-Manufacture	145
	XXVI.	Ditto	145
134.	XXVII.	The Temple of <i>Sin-ko-tyfen</i>	23
		The Temple of <i>Tey-wang-myau</i>	418
	XXVIII.	Plan of <i>Kanton</i> , <i>Shang-chwen-shan</i> , and the adjacent Islands	59
135.	XXIX.	<i>Chinese</i> Barks	130
	XXX.	The Way of catching Fish	137
		The Way of taking Birds	311
136.	XXXI.	The <i>Ta-ko</i> , <i>Li-chi</i> , and Cotton Trees	292
	XXXII.	The Tea-Shrub, Rhubarb, Varnish Tree, and <i>China</i> Root	294
137.	XXXIII.	Plan of <i>Pe-king</i> , and <i>Ching-tse-yu</i>	7
	XXXIV.	Habit of the <i>Chinese</i> and Tartar Mandarins	252
	XXXV.	Plan of <i>Hong-chew fü</i> , Capital of <i>Che-kyang</i>	41
	XXXVI.	Habit of the Emperor of <i>China</i>	242
		Habit of a <i>Bonza</i> and Husbandman	
	XXXVII.	Strolling-Beggars	279
	XXXVIII.	Ditto	279
140.	XXXIX.	<i>Chinese</i> Actors	181
	XL.	Priests or Monks of <i>Fo</i>	212
141.	XLI.	<i>Chinese</i> Sepulchres	94
		Husbandmen	
	XLII.	Music	179
142.	XLIII.	Coins	133
		Counting-Board	
143.	XLV.	The <i>Su-ping</i> , and the <i>Chew-ku</i> , or <i>Goyawa</i> -Trees	292
	XLVI.	The Cinnamon, and <i>Ya-ta</i> Trees	294
144.	XLVII.	Temple-Images	210
	XLVIII.	Ditto	210
			145. XLIX.

A LIST of PLATES in the Fourth VOLUME

No	Plate		To face
			Page
145.	XLIX.	Tartars of Naun-koton, or Tsisfikar	356
	L.	Taguri-Tartars	357
146.	LI.	A Map of Quang-tong, or Lyau-tong Province, and the Kingdom of Korea	319
147.	LII.	Bell of Pe-king, and Bell of Erford	10
	LIII.	The Habits of the Eastern Tartars	359
148.	LIV.	A Tartar Man, Woman, and Priest	403
	LV.	Northern-Tartary Woman [a Native of Hami or Khamil]	456
149.	LVI.	Common Dress in Tibet	456
	LVII.	Court Lords at Lassa	457
150.	LVIII.	The Castle of Putala	456
	LIX.	Image-Worship in Tibet	461
151.	LX.	Nau-kang hyen, near Kan-chew	32
	LXI.	Grand Lama, and King of Tangut	460
152.	LXII.	Flying-Fish, and Village of Lang-tang, near Ma-kau.	59
	LXIII.	Plan of Kya-chew, and Pu-ngan chew	68
153.	LXIV.	Water-Castle of Kanton	59
	LXV.	Map of Eastern-Tartary	350
154.	LXVI.	Death of the last Chinese Emperor of the Ming	112
	LXVII.	Map of Great-Tibet	450
155.	LXVIII.	Map of Western-Tartary	367
	LXIX.	The Empire of Hya	433
157.	LXX.	Map of Karaxm, Bukhâria, and Turkestan	477
159.	LXXII.	Map of Kitay	435
	LXXIII.	Uzbek-Tartars	483

N. B. Plate LXX and LXXII are to follow, there being a Mistake in the Numbers.



A New General COLLECTION of

VOYAGES and TRAVELS.

B O O K I.

A DESCRIPTION of CHINA:

CONTAINING

The Geography, with the civil and natural History.

INTRODUCTION.

Introduction.
Authors.

Trigautius.

THE Authors, who have treated of *China*, are very many. Those who would see pretty compleat Catalogues of them, may consult two late Writers^a; but the principal Authors, and such whose Relations extend to the whole Country in general, are those we have already made Extracts from: Namely, *Nieuhof*, *Montanus*, *Navarrete*, *le Comte*, *Gemelli*, and *du Halde*. To these, of whom some Account has been given, must, however, be added the Relations of *Nicholas Trigautius*, *Alvarez Samedo*, *Martin Martini*, and *Gabriel Magalhaens*, all four Jesuits. The first is an Account of *China*, and the Travels of several Jesuits through it, intermixed with the History of the Mission. It makes a very thick Octavo, and is intitled, *A History of the Christian Expedition to the Kingdom of China, extracted from the Memoirs of P. Math. Nieuh.* It was written originally in *Latin*, and published at *Rome* in 1615. The next Year an Edition of it in *French* came-out at *Lyons*, and another at *Paris*, in 1618. *Trigautius*, or *Trigault*, hath added many Remarks of his own to supply Omissions. He had been long in *China*, had seen six Provinces, and understood the Language, therefore more capable of giving a full and exact Relation of Matters than most of those who had published Remarks before him. These, in his Preface, he accuses with committing gross Errors, not excepting some of his own Society, but supposes they related Things on the Credit

of Persons who imposed on them through Ignorance or Design.

Introduction.

SAMEDO's History of the Empire of *Samedo*. *China* was collected from the Memoirs and Observations of that Jesuit, (who had resided twenty-two Years in that Country) and published in *Portuguese* by *Manoel de Faria y Sousa*, the famous Commentator on the Poet *Camoens*, and Author of the *Portuguese Asia*, from whence we have given considerable Extracts in our first Volume. It was translated into *English*, and published at *London*, 1655, in Folio, illustrated with Maps and Cuts. *Montanus* hath compiled his Description of *China* chiefly from *Samedo* and *Martini*.

THIS last Author published two remarkable Works relating to *China*; one a geographical Description in *Latin*, under the Title of *Atlas Sinenfis*, in Folio, taken from the *Chinese* Books, with large particular Maps of the Provinces. There is added, by Way of Introduction, a general Account of the Country and its Inhabitants; their Manners, Customs, Arts, and Manufactures. *Thevenot* has inserted a Translation of this Work in the third Part of his Collection of Voyages, but has given only the general Map of *China*. *Nieuhof* gave a Sort of Abridgment of the Description of the Provinces, which *Montanus* has published more at large. This Description of *Martini*, who was long in *China*, and travelled over seven Provinces, is certainly a very

^a *Jo. Alb. Fabricius's Salutaris lux Evangelii, &c. Hamburg, 1731, in Quarto, where there is a compleat Catalogue of the Jesuit Missioners Letters; and the Preface to the Hague Edition of du Halde's China, in four Volumes Quarto, 1736.*

Introduction. noble Performance; but his Maps must give Place a to the late more accurate Surveys of the Jesuits, published by *du Halde*. This Author likewise charges his Chorography with many Mistakes and Exaggerations, as being taken chiefly from the *Chinese* Writers, who often magnify Things beyond the Truth. For this Reason, in the following Account of the Provinces, we have chosen to have Recourse almost wholly to that found in *du Halde*; which was compiled by those who made the above-mentioned Surveys, and consequently had seen every thing they describe with their own Eyes: However, their Description is not so compleat as *Martini's*, having described only the Cities of the first Rank in each Province; whereas *other* hath descended to those of the second and third: Yet, when any of those of the two last Ranks appear to be more than ordinary remarkable, they take Care to mention them. *Martini's* second Book above-mentioned is his *Sinica Historiae decas prima*, containing the Affairs of the Empire under its Monarchs from their Original to the Time of Christ. It was first published at *Amsterdam* in 1659, in Octavo. To this may be added, his Relation of the Conquest of *China* by the *Tartars*. He published some other Pieces, and afterwards returned to *China*, where he died in 1662.²

Magal-
haens.

THE Work of *Magalhaens*, the last of the four Authors, was published at *Paris* in 1688, in Quarto, under the Title of *Nouvelle Relation de la Chine*, and the same Year a Translation printed at *London*^b in Octavo. This Jesuit was of the same Family with the famous Circumnavigator of that Name. He understood the *Chinese* Language very well, and had travelled over the principal Parts of *China* from 1640 to 1648, when he was carried to *Pe-king*. There he staid twenty-nine Years at the Court till his Death, in 1677; without stirring thence, unless once that he was sent to *Makau* by the Emperor's Order. "So that, says the Editor, although the Description which he gives of the Palace does not agree with that we find in the *Dutch Embassy* to *China*, yet there is all the Reason in the World to prefer his Testimony." He makes no Scruple to correct *Martini*, where he knows him to be in an Error; and speaks with Moderation of many other Things, where the Authors had stretched too far in their Remarks. It seems to have been his Design to supply all the Defects which he found in those other Works, and whatever else was wanting; in order to give the Public some compleat

Knowledge of *China*: For the Matters contained in his Relation have either been wholly omitted by all former Authors, or else but very slightly touched. Thus far the *French* Editor.

WE learn from his Life^c, written by *Lewis Buglio*^d the Jesuit, his inseparable Companion for thirty-six Years, that he was born in 1609. He escaped several Dangers in the first Years of his Mission in *China*. The first Time was within two Years after his Entrance into the Empire, when being in the Province of *Se-chuen* with *Buglio*, the *Bonzas* accused them of Rebellion; and the chief *Mandarin*, fearing a Revolt, ordered them to be bastonaded: But they escaped by the Protection of other *Mandarins*. Shortly after, he with other Missioners fell into the Hands of that bloody Rebel *Chang hyen chung*, who at first paid them much Respect: But on their Petition to retire, he ordered them to be cut in Pieces; which Sentence had been executed but for the Intercession of his chief General, who was his adopted Son. At the Beginning of the Regency of *Kang hi's* four Guardians, having been accused by some Footmen belonging to a Christian *Mandarin*, who was put-out of his Employment, that he had given Presents in Favour of their Master, he was twice put to the Rack, by squeezing both his Feet in a Press, a dreadful Torture, and then condemned to be strangled: But the Regents, as well for that he was a Stranger, as because they were satisfied of his Innocence, acquitted him. Three Years after, in the great Persecution which all the Missioners suffered, he was apprehended with others at *Pe-king*, and loaded for four Months with nine Chains^e, three about his Neck, three about his Arms, and three about his Legs. He was also condemned to have forty Lashes, and to be banished for Life into *Tartary*: But a great Earthquake, says our Author, which happened at that Time^f, freed them. After this he made several Nicknacks to please *Kang hi*, as before he had done^g for his Father. Within three Years of his Death, the Wounds made in his Feet by the Rack broke-out afresh; and for two Months before he died, those Pains were accompanied with Defluxions, that hindered Respiration: So that he was constrained to sleep sitting in a Chair, for fear of being choaked. He was buried with great Honour by the Emperor, who himself wrote his Elogy^h.

WITH regard to his Account of *China*, we are informed by the *French* Editor, that at his Death he left a *Portuguese* Manuscript behind

Account of
the Author.

His Suffer-
ings and
Escape.

Form of
the

^a See Vol. III. p. 437. c.

^b Intituled, *A new History of China, containing a Description of the most considerable Particulars of that vast Empire*. It takes-up three hundred and fifty-two Pages.

^c Inserted at the

End of his Relation of *China*.

^d This *Buglio* is, probably, the Author of the Narrative of the *Dutch*

Embassy inserted in Vol. III. p. 483.

^e The Author, in his Relation, p. 207, says, that *John* nine

years, *Lewis Buglio*, *Ferdinand Verbiest*, and himself were imprisoned for two Months, and bound each with

Chains.

^f This Forgery has been detected by *Nouvaille*. See Vol. III. p. 506.

^g See *Muguil-*

lans's History of China, p. 340, & seqq.

^h See *Muguil-*

him, intitled, *The twelve Excellencies of China*. a This, Couplet the Jesuit brought to Rome, and presented to the Cardinal d'Estrees; who put it into the Hands of the Editor upon his Offer to translate it into French. He did so, and published it under the Title of *Nouvelle Relation de la Chine*, which he judged more suitable than the other; because the Narrative was not confined to twelve Excellencies, and the Articles under that Division were not proportionable: For whereas some of those Excellencies took-up more than thirty or forty Pages, others did not fill above one or two. He therefore thought it better to divide it into twenty-one Chapters, and give them Titles answering to their respective Subjects. He likewise added Notes, either to supply Defects, or illustrate Obscurities, without making any Alteration in the Text.

The Contents. THE Contents of the Chapters, as the Editor has divided the Book, are as follows: 1. The Names given to China by the Natives and Foreigners. Also of the Countries of Katay and Mangi. 2. Extent and Division of China, Number of walled Towns, and other Particulars from Chinese Authors. 3. Antiquity of the Empire, and high Opinion the Chinese have of it. 4. Characters and Language of China. 5. Genius, and principal Books. 6. Civility and Politeness, with some of their Feasts. 7. Public Works; particularly, the great Canal. 8. Their great Industry. 9. Their Navigation. 10. Great Plenty of all Things. 11. Nobility of China. 12. The wonderful Government, Orders of Mandarins, and Council of State. 13. Supreme Tribunals, civil and military. 14. Other Tribunals of Pe-king. 15. Tribunals and Mandarins of Provinces. 16. Grandeur of the Emperor, and his Revenues. 17. Description of Pe-king, and Walls of the Palace. 18. The twenty Apartments of the Palace. 19. The twenty particular Palaces therein. 20. Other Palaces and Temples within the same. 21. The seven imperial Temples in Pe-king; and how the Emperor appears in public. To these are added, the Life of the Author, written by Buglio.

THIS Relation is embellished with a large Plan of Pe-king, and the Palace. But, by the Notes to the seventeenth, twentieth, and twenty-first Chapters, it appears to be the Work of the French Editor, not, of Magalhaens himself. Besides, it differs much from the Draughts given by Gaubil and Du Halde.

Kau's Description of China. We must not forget to mention a short Description of the vast Empire of China, by Dionysius Kau, added at the End of Isbrand Ides's Travels through Tartary to that Country. This Ambassador, in a Letter to Burgo-master Nicholas Witsen, (to whom he communicated

the Relation) observes, that Kau, from whom he had the short Description, was a Chinese of Integrity and Credit, born at Kanton; and that having embraced the *Romish* Religion, he travelled through Siam and India, where he professed Surgery. The Dutch Translator, in a Postscript, informs us, that he made use of two Manuscripts, one written in barbarous and unintelligible Latin, the other in somewhat better German; but knows not how the Work came into those Languages. He adds, that the two Copies agreed, except in the Expression of Numbers, or some other inconsiderable Matters; and that both were frequently obscure: That where they were wholly unintelligible, or too widely differed from each other, he had left Blanks, or supplied the Defect by Extracts from the best Authors on the Subject; and, that he had illustrated the dark Places with Notes.

THIS short Work is divided into twenty-five Chapters: The first eighteen contain the Description of the Provinces. The nineteenth treats of the Natives and Christians there. The twentieth, of the great Wall, Rivers, Shipping, Bridges, Sluices, Ports. The twenty-first, Religions of China. The twenty-second, Chinese Manners and Ceremonies. The twenty-third, Trees and Fruits. The twenty-fourth, Countries and Islands round China. The twenty-fifth, last Race of Chinese Emperors: Dutch Translator's Postscript.

ALTHOUGH we have made use of all the above-mentioned Authors, yet, it must be confessed, it hath been done, in a good Measure, under the Guidance of Du Halde, who had before extracted from them what appeared most worthy of Credit. We have already given an Account of that Jesuit's Performance so far as relates to China. It remains therefore, only to add here the Names of the Missioners, from whose Memoirs, either printed or Manuscript, his Work was compiled; viz. Martin Martini; Ferdinand Verbiest; Philippe Couplet; Gabriel Magalhaens; Jean de Fontaney; Joachim Bouvet; Jean François Gerbillon; François Noel; Louis le Comte; Claude Visdelou, present Bishop of Audiopolis; Jean-Baptiste Regis; Joseph-Henry de Premare; François-Xavier Dentrecolles; Julien-Placide Hervieu; Cyr Contancin; Pierre de Goville; Jean-Armand Nyel; Dominique Parrenin; Pierre Jartoux; Vincent de Tarte; Joseph-Anne Marie de Maille; Jean-Alexis Gollet; Claude Jacquemin; Louis Parquet; Emeric de Chavagnac; Antoine Gaubil; Jean-Baptiste Jacques. But it is to be observed, that Du Halde does not quote his Authors regularly, but only at the Head of large Articles, or when he introduces some long Description.

^a It begins at Page 115, and ends with the Book, containing ninety-five Quarto Pages. ^b Isbrand Ides's Travels, in the Note, p. 115, compared with p. 210. ^c See Vol. III. p. 513. ^d In the *Lettres Edifiantes*, and elsewhere.

C H A P. I.

A GEOGRAPHICAL DESCRIPTION of CHINA.

INTRODUCTION.

A general View of China: Its Name, Situation, and Extent. Soil and Produce. Trade and Curiosities. Public Works. Cities numerous. In Form, and Buildings, all much alike. Division into Provinces. Their mutual Situation.

Names given
China

IT is doubtful whence the Name of *China* came to *Europeans*, as not being used by the Natives. *Magalhaens* observes, that, in *Bengal*, it is called *Chin*; and *Navarette* thinks, that Name obtained there on Account of the Silk which is called *Chin*. The first of those Authors judges it might be derived from the Family of *Chin*, which reigned one hundred and sixty-nine Years after Christ; or, rather, from that of *Sin*, or *Tsin*, which governed two hundred and forty-six before the Christian Era. This seems the more probable of the two, because *Tsin-shi wbang-ti*, its Founder, having, by his Fleets, conquered *Bengal*, the *Greeks*, among whom we find it soon after, might have brought it from *India*.

By Strangers,

MAGALHAENS says, the Western Tartars call *China*, and the *Chinese* themselves, *Hara Kitay*^a, or *Black Barbarians*; from them the *Russians* name it *Kitay*: But, that the Inhabitants of the Kingdom of *Sahamalaha*^b, who are *Mohammedans*, bordering on *Shen-si*; those of *Tumet* or *Tibet*, and the People of the Kingdom of *U-san-quey*, bordering on *Se-chwen*, corrupting the Word, call it *Katay*; So the Merchants of *Indostan* name it *Katayo*^c. But it must be observed, that *Kitay*, or *Katay*, was a Name given by the *Mongols*, or *Moguls*, only to the North of the *Yellow River* Provinces, and adjoining Parts of *Tartary*, formerly possessed by the *Kin* Tartars, (of whom the *Manchews*, now governing, are the Descendants;) and, that towards the Declension of their Empire, some of their fugitive Subjects erected a new Monarchy to the West of their Dominions, from thence called *Si-hya*, or Western *Hya*^d, by the *Chinese*, but *Hara Khatay* by the *Mongols*. The *Manchews*,

or Eastern Tartars, before their late Conquest, stiled it *Nikan Koron*^e, or the Kingdom of the Barbarians.

THE *Chinese* themselves seem to have no fixed Name for their Country; which changes with every new Family that ascends the Throne. Thus, under the preceding Race of *Chinese* Emperors, it was called *Tay-ming-que*, or the Kingdom of great Brightness: But the Tartars now reigning term it, *Tay-tsing-que*, or the Kingdom of great Purity; which are the Names or Titles of their respective Families, or Races, assumed by the Founders. In their Books and Petitions to the Emperor, they generally make use of the Word *Shang-que*, High and Sovereign Kingdom: The Literati, in their Writings, that of *Chung-que*^f; the Kingdom of the Center or Middle^g: Either because their first Monarch fixed his Seat in *Ho-nan*, the middle Province; or, to express its lying in the Middle of barbarous Nations. They likewise, for Grandeur, use the Word *Tyen-hya*; which signifies, the Kingdom containing all that is under Heaven.

CHINA is bounded on the North by the great Wall, which divides it from Western Tartary; on the West, with *Tibet*, and *Ava*; on the South, by the *Laos*, *Tong-king*, and the *Chinese* Sea, or Oriental Ocean; and on the East, by the same Ocean. It is, properly, separated from *Tibet* by the Countries of *Koko-nor* and the *Si-fan*; and has to the North-West, the Country of *Hami*, *Khamil*, or *Khamul*, a Part of *Little Bukharia*; from whence it is divided by Part of the great Desert, which, there, is eight or nine Days Journey over.

THERE is scarce any Country whose Situation and Dimensions have been better ascertained than those of *China*; by Means of the Surveys and accurate astronomical Observations made by the Missioners. From whence it appears to lie between an hundred and fifteen and an hundred and eighty-one Degrees of Eastern Longitude^h; and between twenty Degrees fourteen Minutes and forty-one Degrees twenty-five Minutes of North

^a Or, *Ka* a *Katay*. ^b Or, rather, *Samalban* for *Samarkand*, meaning *Bukharia* in general: ^c *Magalhaens's* Relation of *China*, p. 1, & seq. ^d *Hya*, signifies Guards: The Guard of the Western Part of the Wall having been trusted to these Tartars, as that of the Eastern was to the *Kin*. ^e *Magalhaens* writes *Nika Koron*. ^f And the *Manchews*, at present, *Tulimpa Koron*, which signifies the same Thing. ^g It also signifies the Flower of the Center. ^h From *Ferre*, just twenty Degrees West of *Paris*, and seventeen Degrees thirty-five Minutes, of *London*.

Latitude. Its Shape is almost square; be-
in Length, from South to North, about one
thousand two hundred and seventy-one Miles,
and one thousand one hundred and forty in
Breadth, from West to East.

To give the Reader a general Idea of this
arming Country, we cannot do better than
quote the Words of a late Author, who, in his
Account of *China**, writes as followeth:
“*China* is justly reckoned the finest Country in
the World. It is exceeding fruitful; the
Mountains themselves being cultivated to the
Top. It produces, in many Parts, two Crops
of Rice, and other Grain, with Variety of
uncommon Trees, Fruit, Plants, and Birds.
It abounds with Cattle, Sheep, Horses, and
Game. It is full of large navigable Rivers,
and Lakes, stored with Fish. Its Mountains
yield Mines of Gold, Silver, Copper, brown
and white, &c. with Plenty of Coals every-
where. *Pe-che-li*, *Kyang-nan*, and *Shang-*
tong, are mostly plain, and cut into infinite
Canals, like *Holland*. Being of great Extent
in Latitude, the Northern Provinces are cold,
the Southern hot; but the Air generally good.
In short, *China* far exceeds all other Coun-
tries for Number of People, Cities, and
Towns; the Morality, Civility, and Industry
of its Inhabitants; the Excellency of its
Laws and Government.

Trade and
Curiosities.

“THE Commerce of *China* consists in Gold,
Silver, precious Stones, Porcelain, or *China*
Ware; Silks, Cottons, Spice, Rhubarb, and
other Drugs; Teas, japanned or varnished
Works, &c. The Trade of the Provinces with
one another is so very great, it needs no fo-
reign Vent for its Commodities. They reckon
in *China* no fewer than one thousand four
hundred and seventy-two Rivers and Lakes,
and two thousand ninety-nine remarkable
Mountains. Besides Oranges, Lemons, and
Citrons, which came first from hence, there
are the Varnish Trees; the Tallow Tree, and
white Wax Tree, for Candles; the Iron
Wood, of which Anchors are made; not to
mention the Tea Shrub. Here is the Musk-
Deer, and Man-Ape: The Golden Fish, very
beautiful; and the *Hay-feng*, very hideous.

Public
Works.

“It is the most famous for public Works, and
consequently for public Spirit, in the World.
The most eminent are the great Wall before-
mentioned, built one thousand nine hundred
and sixty Years ago, against the *Tartars*: Be-
ing one thousand seven hundred and seventy
Miles long, from twenty to twenty-five Feet
high, and broad enough for five or six Horse-

men to travel a-breast. The great Canal,
which extends three hundred Leagues, quite
through the Empire, from *Kanton* to *Pe-king*,
(crouded with infinite Numbers of Barks and
Boats) made four hundred and sixty-four Years
since. They reckon three hundred and thirty-
one remarkable Bridges, one thousand one
hundred and fifty-nine Towers and triumphal
Arches, erected to Kings, and eminent Persons;
famous Libraries, two hundred and seventy-
two; seven hundred and nine Halls, built in
Memory of Ancestors, or worthy Men; Sepul-
chres, remarkable for their Architecture, six
hundred and eighty-eight; thirty-two Palaces
of the Regulos; thirteen thousand six hundred
and forty-seven Palaces of the Magistrates.

Introduction.

“It contains one thousand five hundred and
eighty-one Cities; one hundred and seventy-
three of the first Rank, two hundred and thirty-
five of the second, and one thousand one hun-
dred and seventy-three of the third Rank, be-
sides innumerable Boroughs and Villages, many
as large as Cities; two thousand eight hundred
and twenty-one fortified Places and Citadels,
besides three thousand Forts on both Sides of
the great Wall, and three thousand Towers
for Watch and Centries.”

Cities num-
bered.

It hath been already observed, that most of
the Cities of *China* resemble one another so
nearly, that to see one, is almost sufficient to
give an Idea of them all. They are generally
square, when the Ground will permit, and in-
compassed with high Walls, defended by Towers,
built as Buttresses, at convenient Distances.
They have sometimes Ditches, either dry or wet.
There are, within the Cities, also other Towers,
either round, hexagonal, or octagonal, and eight
or nine Stories high; triumphal Arches in the
Streets; tolerably handsome Temples consecrated
to their Saints, or erected in Honour of their
Heros, and those who have done some important
Service to the State: In short, there are certain
public Buildings more remarkable for their vast
Extent than their Magnificence.

To this we may add a pretty many large
Squares, and long Streets; some very wide,
others narrow, with Houses on each Side, having
only a Ground-Floor, or one Story at most.
There one sees Shops adorned with *China* Ware,
Silks, and varnished or japanned Goods: Before
the Door of each, there is placed, on a Pedestal,
a Board, seven or eight Feet high, either painted
or gilded, with three large Characters thereon,
by Way of a Sign. You sometimes find on it,
the Names of two or three Sorts of Goods; and
underneath, that of the Shop-keeper himself.

All much
like.

* See *A short Way to know the World*, or, *A Compendium of modern Geography*, printed in 1745, p. 241, &
seqq. In the *Lettres Esquissées*, p. 400. e. Du Halde says, to their Idols.

with

The Geographical with these Words, *Pá hú*, that is, *He will not cheat you*. This Kind of double Row of Pilasters, placed at equal Distances, form a Colonnade, which makes an agreeable Prospect enough.

THE Beauty of the Chinese Cities consisting wholly in these Particulars, it was thought proper to premise this general Account, to avoid making useless and tedious Repetitions in speaking of the principal Cities of every Province. For this Reason we shall confine ourselves to what is most remarkable in them, with respect to their Situation, public Structures, Trade, or Commodities; dwelling more or less upon each Subject, as it may happen to deserve it.

Division into Provinces. CHINA is divided into fifteen Provinces; the least of them large enough to make a Kingdom, as each originally was; and some of them contained several little Monarchies. The following Table shews their Extent and capital Cities.

	Length.	Breadth.	Chief Cities.
<i>Pe-cheli</i>	385	239	<i>Pe-king</i>
<i>Ho-nan</i>	340	330	<i>Kay-fong fú</i>
<i>Kyang-nan</i>	360	330	<i>Nan-king</i>
<i>Kyang-si</i>	350	290	<i>Nan-chang fú</i>
<i>Che-kyang</i>	250	190	<i>Hang-chew fú</i>
<i>Shan-tong</i>	380	225	<i>Tsi-nan fú</i>
<i>Shan-si</i>	410	195	<i>Tay-ywen fú</i>
<i>Shen-si</i>	540	450	<i>Si-ngan fú</i>
<i>Se-chwen</i>	600	400	<i>Ching-tú fú</i>
<i>Hu-quang</i>	520	405	<i>Vu-chang fú</i>
<i>Quang-tong</i>	560	345	<i>Quang-chew fú</i>
<i>Quang-si</i>	375	250	<i>Quey-ling fú</i>
<i>Fo-kyen</i>	285	200	<i>Fú-chew fú</i>
<i>Quey-chew</i>	325	185	<i>Quey-yang fú</i>
<i>Yun-nan</i>	455	380	<i>Yun-nan.</i>

Their mutual Situation. SHEN-SI, Shan-si, and Pe-cheli, lie to the North, along the great Wall; Shan-tong, Kyang-nan, Che-kyang, Fo-kyen, and Quang-tong, are maritime Provinces; Quang-si, Yun-nan, and Se-chwen, (which joins Shen-si) lie to the South-West and West; Ho-nan, Hu-quang, Quey-chew, and Kyang-si, possess the Middle.

SECT. I.

Pe-che-li, Cheli, or Li-pa fú, the first Province.

1. A Description of the City of Shun-tyen fú, or Pe-king.

Bounds and Figure. Air. Weather. Soil and Produce. Districts and Cities. Shun-tyen fú, or Pe-king. *Figure and Extent. Inhabitants, Number, Suburbs. Its Walls. The Gates. Streets and Shops. Buildings mean. Temples*

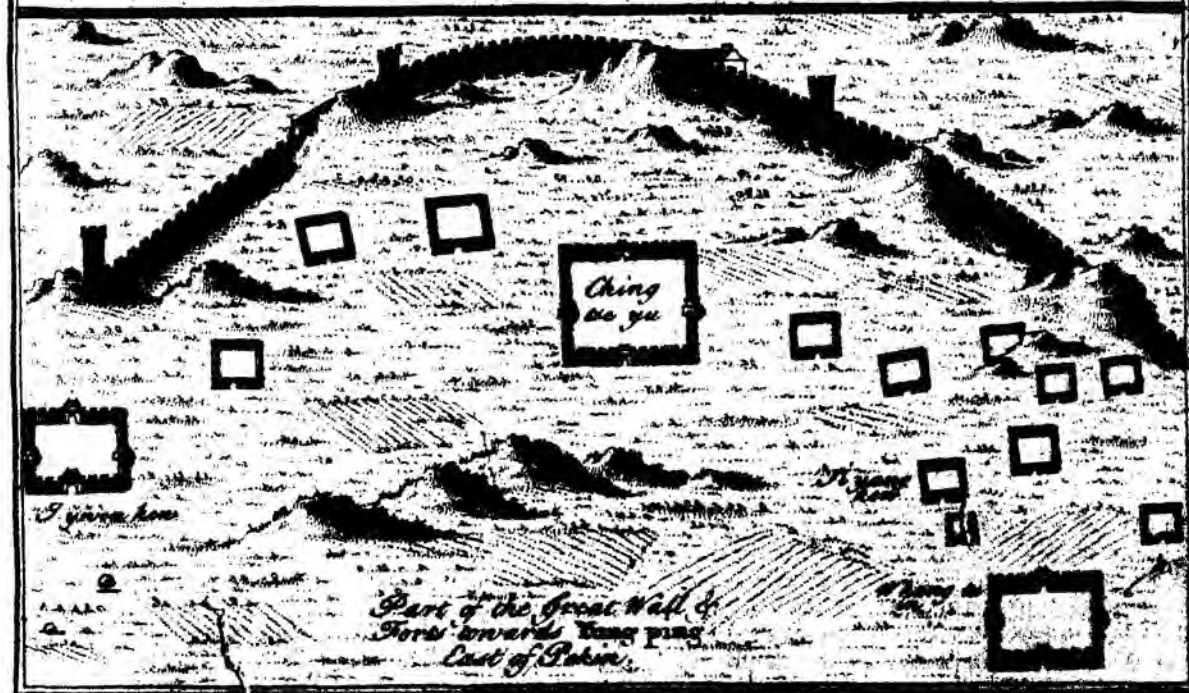
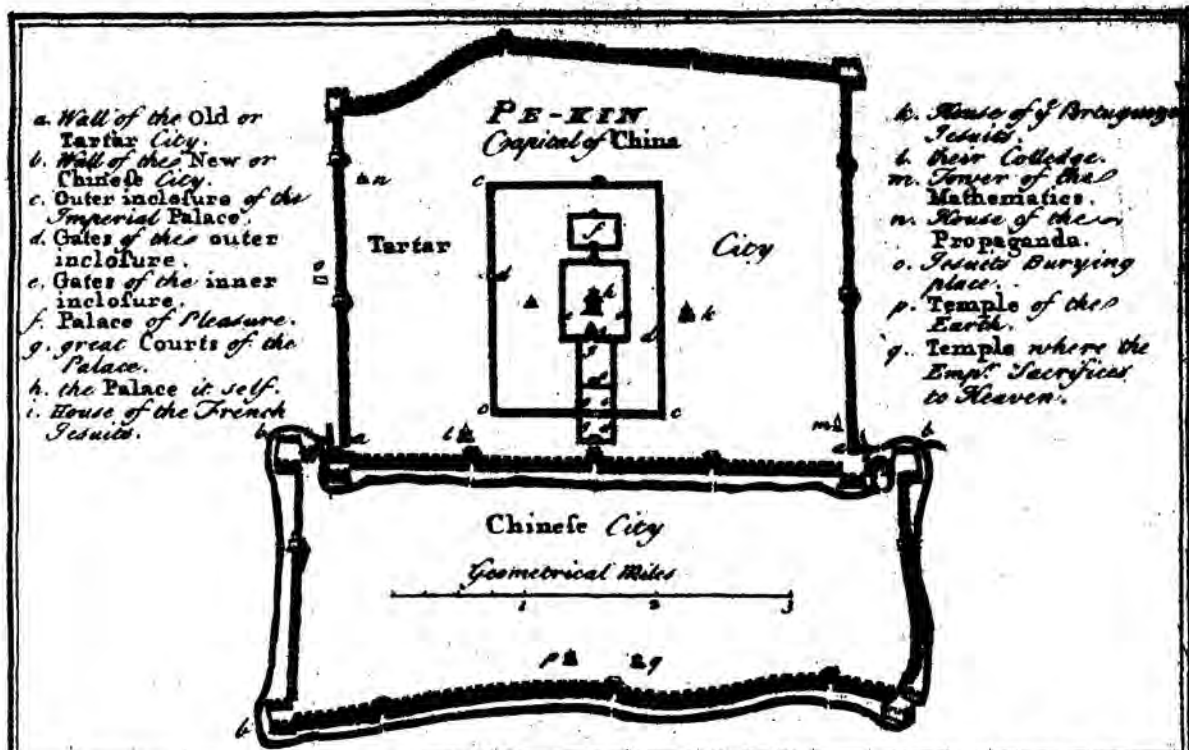
stately. The City well governed. Guard of the Streets. Fine Order: Neatness of the Streets. The Observatory. The old Instruments. Gnomon, and Meridian Line. New Instruments: Large, but ill made: Huge Drums and Bells. City-Reli. Other Buildings.

THIS Province, which is the full, and *China* bath, on the East, the Sea; on the North, the great Wall, and Part of Tartary; on the West, the Province of Shan-si, from which it is separated by Mountains; and on the South, the Provinces of Shan-tong and Ho-nan. Its Figure is triangular.

ALTHOUGH this Province does not extend beyond the forty-second Parallel, and its Air is temperate, yet the Rivers are frozen during four Months; that is, from the End of November to the Middle of March. But, unless a certain North Wind blows, they never feel those piercing Colds the Frost produces in Europe; which may be attributed to the nitrous Exhalations, and especially to the Clearness of the Sky, which is scarce ever clouded. Except towards the End of July, and Beginning of August, which is the wet Season, it seldom rains: But the Dew falls every Night, which, being dried-up at Sun-rise, is succeeded by a very fine Dust, that penetrates every Thing, even Rooms most closely shut; and obliges tender-eyed Travellers to wear a thin Veil over their Faces.

THE Soil of Pe-che-li is even, but sandy, and not very fruitful. As it has but few Canals, Rice is sown dry in many Places, and grows very well; but is somewhat hard to boil. It abounds with all Sorts of Grain, chiefly Wheat and Millet; besides Cattle, Pulse, and Fruit. Its Rivers are full of Fish, especially excellent Cray-Fish; and the Mountains afford a great deal of Pit-Coal; Wood being scarce. Among the Animals, there is a particular Sort of Cats, with long Hair, and hanging Ears, which the Chinese Ladies are very fond of. This Province is rendered considerable, by being, as it were, the Rendezvous of all the Riches of the Empire. The Inhabitants are neither so polite, nor addicted to the Sciences, as those of the Southern Parts; but much more robust and warlike. The same may be said of all the Chinese inhabiting the Northern Provinces.

IT is divided into nine Countries, or Districts, each of which has a Fú, or City of the first Rank, whereon several others depend. These Cities are one hundred and forty in Number; of which twenty are Chew, or Cities of the second Rank; and one hundred and twenty Hyen, or



The Gates. Cities of the third Rank: Not to speak of Bo-roughs and Villages without Number, some as large as Cities; but not intitled to that Name, because neither encompassed with Walls nor Ditches.

There nine *Fü*, or Capitals, are, 1. *Shun-tyen fü*, or *Pe-king*. 2. *Pau-ting fü*. 3. *Ho-kyen fü*. 4. *Ching-ting fü*. 5. *Shun-te fü*. 6. *Quang-ping fü*. 7. *Tay-ming fü*. 8. *Yong-ping fü*. 9. *Swen-wha fü*.

Shun-tyen fü, or, Pe-king.

1. *SHUN-TYEN FÜ*, called *Pe-king*, or the Court of the North, from its being the ordinary Residence of the Emperors, (removed hither from *Nan-king*, or the Court of the South, about the Year one thousand four hundred and five, 'to watch the *Tartars*) is the Capital of the whole Empire, situated in a very fruitful Plain, twenty Leagues from the great Wall. This City, which is almost square, is divided into two. That where the Emperor's Palace stands, is named *Lau-ching*, or, the old City: It is also called the *Tartar City*, because the Houses are distributed among the *Tartars*; as were likewise the Lands about it, and the Cities, within a certain Distance, exempt from Taxes and Tribute, when the present Family was established on the Throne. The second is called *Sin-ching*, or, the new City; it may be termed, the new *Chinese* City, because, on the above Occasion, Part of the *Chinese* retired to it out of the other, which is by much the better peopled of the two *.

Figure and Extent.

LE COMTE says, this *Chinese* City is best inhabited: That they built it on being driven by the *Tartars* out of the other, which was four Leagues in Compass: But that, both together, (without their Suburbs) are six great Leagues in Circuit, allowing three thousand six hundred Paces to each League, according to the Measurement made of it by the Emperor *Kang hi's* Command.

PARIS is much finer, but much less: For being in Length no more than two thousand five hundred Paces, if square, it would not exceed ten thousand Paces in Compass; consequently it is only half as big as the *Tartar* City alone, and but a Quarter as large as all *Pe-king*.

Inhabitants, Number.

BUT considering that the Houses there are generally but one Story high, and those of *Paris*, one with another, four, it may have more Lodgings than *Pe-king*, whose Streets are much wider, and Palace not half inhabited. Yet he allows

Pe-king to have more People, because twenty or more *Chinese* will lie in as little Room as ten *Parisians*, and from the incredible Number of Men seen in the Streets, to which those of *Paris* look like Wildernesses. Some have thought both Cities could not contain fewer than six or seven Millions of Souls: But he accounts for these Throngs from the Curiosity of the Inhabitants to see Jugglers, Ballad Singers, and other Diversions; Trains of *Mandarins* and others; Guards of the Streets; the flocking of the Country Folks with their Provisions; the Mechanics seeking Business out of Doors. He therefore allows but two Millions of Inhabitants, or twice as many as in *Paris* b.

Province Pe-che-li.

BUT the Number of Inhabitants must be considerably more, if it be considered, that every Gate in the Walls, encompassing both Cities, has a populous Suburb, equal at least to a large Town; especially one of those on the West, because most People, coming from all Parts of the Empire, enter the City on that Side. The *Tartars* and their Troops here are divided into eight Banners, and each City into five Quarters, Wards, or Jurisdictions c.

THESE Cities are encompassed with Walls, *in Walls.* Those of the ancient City are stately, and worthy the greatest Capital in the World: But those of the new City, narrow, and no better than the Walls of *Nan-king*, and the Generality of the Cities of *China*. A Horseman may ascend the Walls of the old City by Means of a Ramp, or Slope, which begins at a great Distance. In several Places there are Houses built for a Corps-de-Guard. The Towers are within Bow-shot of each other; some of them much larger than the rest, and capable of containing small Bodies of Reserve d.

THE Ditch is dry, but very broad and deep, *The Ditch.* All is regular and as well kept as if they were in continual Apprehension of a Siege e.

THE Gates of the City, nine in Number f, *The Gates.* which are high and well arched, support exceeding large Pavilions, nine Stories high g. Each Story is furnished with Windows and Loopholes; and the lowest forms a great Hall for the Soldiers and Officers on Guard. Before each Gate there is an open Area, or Parade h, of above three hundred and sixty Feet, (which serves for a Place of Arms) encompassed by a semicircular Wall, like that of the City. The Entrance of this Pa-

Dr. Halde's China, vol. 1. p. 67, & seq. This Author makes the new City the *Tartar* City. *Le Comte's Memoirs of China*, p. 54, & seq. *Mogelhaens's Relation of China*, p. 265, & seq.

Halde, as before, p. 66; and *Le Comte*, as before, p. 72. *The same.* This must be understood of the *Tartar* City only, for the other has seven, as appears from the Plan: So that, in the Circumference of both Cities, there are thirteen Gates.

Le Comte says, all the Beauty of the Gates consists in a prodigious Height; which, at a Distance, makes the finest Shew in the World, and is preferable to all the Ornament of *European* Gates. *Memoirs of China*, p. 72. There are no Parades in the Plan of *Pe-king* given by *du Halde*, but they are found in that of *Ching-ting fü*.

The Geogra-
phy.

grade is never on that Side which faces the great a the inward Rooms and Offices can boast ne State nor Cleanliness.

Road into the City: This Road is also com-
manded by a Pavilion like the former; so that,
as the Cannon of the one can play on the City,
the Cannon of the other scours the neighbouring
Country. Each Gate has a double Pavilion,
built in like Manner on the Platforms of the
Walls, and furnished with Artillery; so that
there needs no other Sort of Citadel to keep the
People in Awe^a.

Streets and
Shops.

ALMOST all the Streets are built in a direct b
Line, the greatest being about an hundred and
twenty Foot broad, and a good League long;
and the Shops, where they sell Silks and China-
Ware, adorned with their Signs, which general-
ly take-up the whole Street, make a very agree-
able Perspective^b. The little Streets run all from
East to West, and divide the Space between
the great Streets into equal and proportionable
Islands^c.

THE infinite Multitudes of People who throng c
these Streets, without one Woman, and the Con-
fusion caused by the surprizing Number of Horses,
Cattle, and Carriages, is astonishing: Persons of
Distinction would be stopped every Moment, if
they had not a Horseman to go-before and call to
the Passengers to make Way. People are carried
through the Streets in Chairs by Men, or more
usually on Horseback. One may sometimes hire
a Horse or Mule the whole Day for six or seven
Pence. There are Books sold, which give an d
Account of the Wards, Streets or Places where
every Person lives, who has any public Employ-
ment^d.

Buildings
mean.

THE Streets have their respective Names, and
the fairest of all, is that called *Chang ngan kyay*,
or *The Street of perpetual Repose*, already de-
scribed^e. But the Houses bear no Proportion to
the Beauty of the Streets, being neither well-
built, nor high enough. All the public Struc-
tures, except the Emperor's Palace, are so mean, e
that it would be absurd to give that Name to the
Noblemens Houses, being but one Story high,
like all the rest: Yet the great Number of A-
partments for themselves and Domestics makes
some Amends for their Want of Beauty and Mag-
nificence; which is owing to a political Custom
rather than the Inclination of the *Chinese*, who
love Expence and Grandeur.

THEIR Tribunals of Justice are built no better
than common Houses. The Courts indeed are f
large, the Gates lofty, and sometimes imbellished
with tolerable Ornaments of Architecture; but
the inward Rooms and Offices can boast ne-
State nor Cleanliness.

HOWEVER, one frequently meets with sple-
Temples, raised by the Princes and People
vast Expence, and beautified with great N-
bers of Images. The Roofs especially a-
servable for the Lustre of their Tiles, varn-
with Yellow and Green; for the many cur-
Figures which are placed on every Side, and the
Dragons shooting-out at the Corners, painted in
the same Colours. The Emperors have founded
several within the outward Bounds of the Palace;
among which, two more eminent than the rest
were built by the Father of *Kang-hi*, at the Re-
quest of his Mother, who was much infatuated
with the Religion of the *Lama's*^f.

THE Governor of *Pe-king*, who is a Man-
chew Tartar of Figure, and called *Kyû-men ti-tû*,
or *The General of the nine Gates*, in all civil
Matters has under his Jurisdiction both the Sol-
diers and People. Nothing can exceed the Po-
licy observed here: It is amazing to see the per-
fect Tranquillity that is maintained among such
infinite Numbers; and for several Years together
one shall not hear of a House being broke open,
or a Man murdered: For it is almost impossible
the Authors should escape unpunished.

ALL the great Streets, which run in a Line
from one Gate to another, have Corps-de-Guard.
Day and Night there are Soldiers with Swords by
their Sides and Whips in their Hands to chastise
all, without Distinction, who make any Dis-
turbance; and to confine whoever resists. The
lesser Streets, which terminate in the greater,
have, at the Ends, wooden cross-barred Gates;
through which those, who walk within, may be
seen by the Corps-de-Guard, placed over-against
them in the great Streets. There are also Sol-
diers on Duty towards the Middle. The cross-
barred Gates are shut every Night by the Guard,
and seldom opened; except to Persons with a
Lanthorn, who are known, and have good Rea-
son for going-out, as to fetch a Physician. As
soon as the first Stroke of the Watch is given on
a great Bell, one or two Soldiers walk from one
Corps-de-Guard to the other; playing all the
while with a Kind of Clapper by Way of No-
tice. They suffer none to walk in the Night,
and even question those whom the Emperor sends
about Business: If their Answer give the least
Suspicion, they take them into Custody: Besides,
this Guard must answer every Call of the Can-
tinel who is on Duty. It must be added, that

^a Du Halde's China, p. 66.

^b Le Comte's Memoirs of China, p. 57.

^c Magalbaeni's Rela-

tion of China, p. 266.

^d Du Halde, as before; and Magalbaeni, as before.

^e Vol. III, p. 558, by Ge-

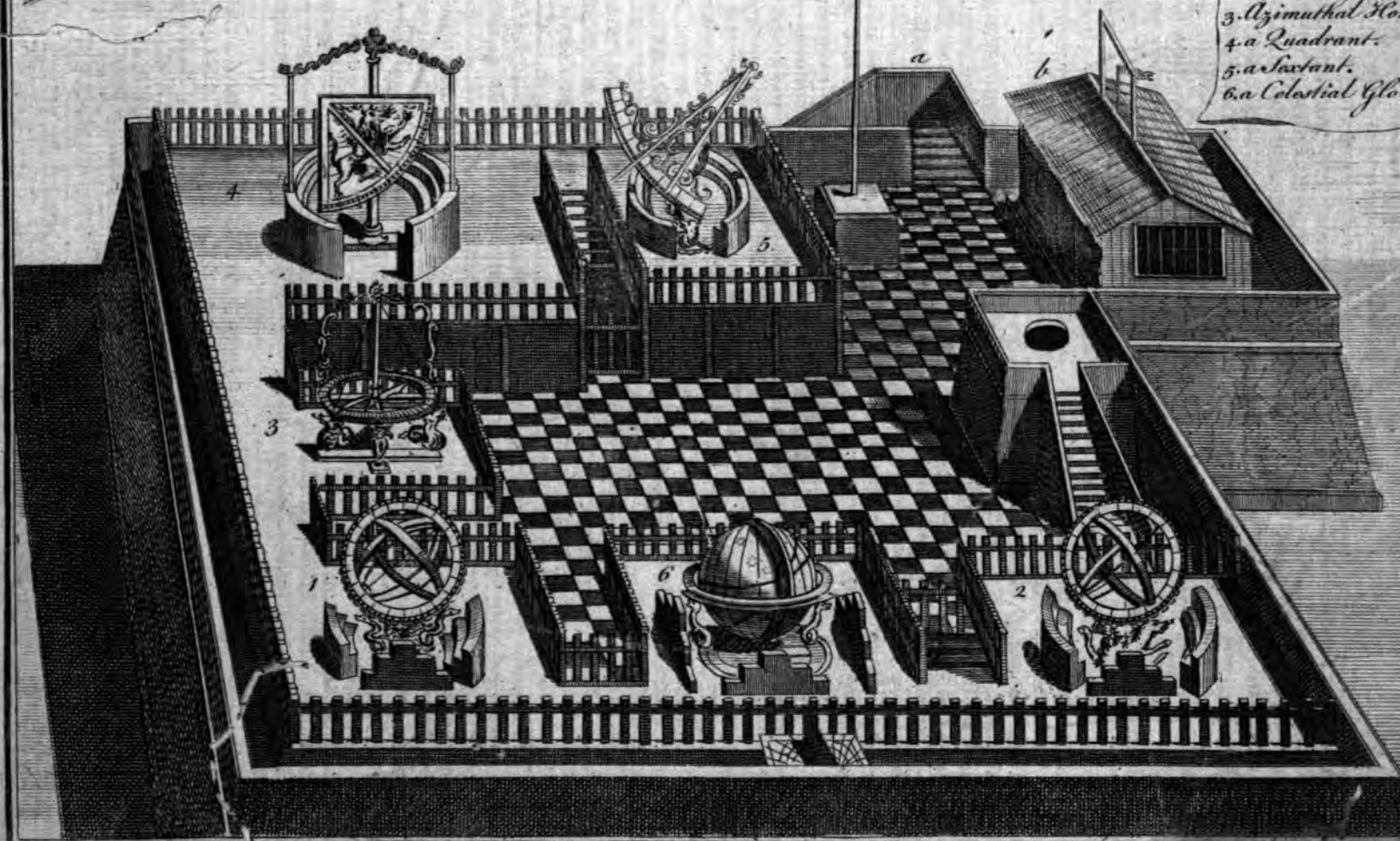
nulli, who took it from Magalbaeni's Relation, p. 266, & seq.

^f Le Comte, as before, p. 58, and 62,

& seq. These are described hereafter.

*The OBSERVATORY at PE-KIN from
le Comte*

- a. Steps going Up.
b. Retiring Room.
1. Zodiacal Sphere.
2. Equinoctial Sphere.
3. Azimuthal Horizon.
4. a Quadrant.
5. a Sextant.
6. a Celestial Globe.*



by the Governor of the City, who is a astronomical Rings. But they had a full View of ^{Province, Pe-che-li.} a celestial Globe, about three Feet Diameter, that lay in a By-Court: Its Figure was almost oval^d; it was divided with little Exactness; and the whole Work very coarse^e.

THEY have, in a lower Room near that Place, ^{A Gnomon, and Meridian Line,} contrived a Gnomon. The Passage, through which the Ray enters, is about eight Feet from the Ground, horizontally placed, and formed by two Copper-Plates, which may be moved to and fro, to make the Orifice larger or smaller. Under it

lies a Table, covered with Brass; in the Midst of which, Length-ways, they have struck a Meridian Line, fifteen Feet long, divided by other cross Lines, which are neither exact nor fine. They have cut little Holes out into the Sides, wherein they put Water, to keep it exactly horizontal; which, for a Chinese Contrivance, says *Le Comte*, is the most tolerable of any I have seen.

As to the new Instruments which possess their ^{New Instru-ments.} Places^f: They are of Brass, large, and well cast, embellished with Figures of Dragons, and very well disposed; so that, was the Niceness of their Divisions answerable to that of the Work, and Telescopes fastened to them instead of Pins, according to the new Method used by the Royal Academy, nothing that we have of this Kind, could be brought in Competition with them. But the Chinese Artificer was either very negligent, or very incapable of following Directions:

So that the Author would rather trust to a Quadrant, a Foot and a half Radius, made by a good Workman at Paris, than to that of six Feet, ^{Large, but ill made,} which is in this Tower. The other Instruments are, a zodiacal armillary Sphere, an equinoctial Sphere, an azimuthal Horizon, and a celestial Globe; all six Feet Diameter. Lastly, a Sextant; whose Radius is eight Feet. These Machines, being most of them above ten Feet from the Ground, have, for the Astronomers greater Conveniency, Marble Steps round them, cut Amphitheatre-wise.

ALTHOUGH these Instruments seem so extraordinary fine, the Chinese could never have been persuaded to make use of them without the Emperor's Order. They are more fond of the most defective Piece of Antiquity, than of the most perfect of the Moderns; differing much in that, says the Author, from us, who are in love with nothing but what is new^g. *Navarette* tells us,

^a *Le Comte*, among the rest, says, p. 58, that the Streets are always pestered with Mud and Dust; of which last the City is continually covered with a Cloud, which gets into the closest Closets; so that one's Goods will always be full of it, notwithstanding the continual watering of the Streets.

^b Called, *The Tower of the Mathematics*.

^c *Navarette*, in whose Time these ancient Instruments were standing, says, the Engravings on the Brass Plates belonging to them were admirably good. See his Description of China, Chap. 6. p. 13.

^d See the Cut. ^e *Le Comte's Memoirs of China*, p. 63, & seqq.

The Observ-
atory.

The old In-
struments.

The Geograph-
phy.

that some Mathematicians always watch at Top a of this Tower, who observe the Motions of the Stars, and remark any Thing particular that appears in the Sky; whereof, the next Day, they give the Emperor an Account. When any Thing unusual occurs, the Astrologers meet, and make their Judgments, whether it portends Evil or Good to the imperial Family ^a.

Large Drums
and Bells.

IN the imperial Palace, you may see Drums and Bells upon the high Towers; and in the City, two other Towers with Drums and Bells. *Magalhaens* says, the City-Drum is fifteen public Cubits ^b Diameter; and, that the Palace-Bell is as big as ever any he saw in *Portugal*: Yet, that the Sound is so loud, clear, and harmonious, that it rather seems to be a musical Instrument than a Bell ^c. *Le Comte* censures *Magalhaens* for this; saying, that what he says, must be understood comparatively; that, as much as their Bells exceed ours in Bigness, so much do ours excel theirs in Sound; that all the Bells he heard at *Pe-king*, seemed to make but a dull obscure Noise; and that it could not well be otherwise, their ^d Clappers being of Wood ^e.

City-Bell.

THE City-Bell, for striking the Watch, or Hour of the Night, is, perhaps, the biggest in the World. Its Diameter, at Bottom, as measured by *Schaal* and *Verbieft*, the Jesuits, is twelve *Chinese* Cubits and Eight-tenths; Thickness towards the Closure, Nine-tenths of a Cubit; Depth within, twelve Cubits; and Weight, one hundred and twenty thousand Pound of Brass. The Editor, in his Notes, observes, that before an Account of this Bell came to *Europe*, *Kircher* thought the Bell of *Erfort* to be the greatest in the World ^f, though it is not above one fourth Part as large; weighing only twenty-four thousand Pounds. But he retracted his Mistake in his *China illustrata*, which our Author had not seen. The Sound, or, rather, terrible Roaring of this *Pe-king* Bell, is so loud, full, and sonorous, that it is heard a great Way round the Country. It was carried up to the Tower with Engines by the above-mentioned Jesuits ^g, to the Astonishment of the whole Court ^h. *Navarette* says, this Bell hangs in a lofty and beautiful Tower; and has an excellent Sound. He adds, that

in 1668, News came to *Kanton*, that it had rang of itself ⁱ; some believed, others gave no Credit to it: If true, says he, *China* has a Bell like that of *Belilla* in *Spain* ^k.

1. Province,
Pe-cheu.

THE Emperors of *China*, together with this extraordinary Bell, caused seven others to be cast; of which there are five that still lie upon the Ground. One of these justly deserves to be admired, as being all over covered with *Chinese* Characters; so fair, so neat, and so exact, that they do not look as if they had been cast, but rather to be written upon Paper, by some excellent Writing-Master ^l. *Navarette* mentions one, which is within, full of Characters ^m. He says, *Adam Schaal* counted ten thousand, and found the Weight one thousand two hundred Quintals, (or sixty Tuns) ⁿ.

THE Editor of *Magalhaens* observes, that *Verbieft*, in his Letters, and *Couplet*, in his Chronology, relate, that these Bells were cast about the Year 1404, by Order of the Emperor *Ching-su*, or *Yong-lo*; five of them weighing one hundred and twenty thousand Weight each; and then, doubtless, the biggest in the World. But *James Rutenfels* ^o affirms, that there is one in the Palace of the grand Duke at *Moskow*, which weighs three hundred and twenty thousand Pound; being so prodigious heavy, that no Art of Man can raise it, nor hang it in the Tower, called *Ivan-velichi*; at the Bottom of which it lies upon Pieces of Timber ^p.

2. The Imperial Palace.

Site and Division. Outer Palace and Wall. The Gates and Guards. Fine Palaces and Lake. Streets and Houses. The Eunuchs. Inner Wall. Guards. Mote and River. Authors differ. Squares before the Palace. First Apartment. Second Apartment. Third and fourth Apartments. Fifth Apartment. Sixth Apartment. Imperial Throne. Seventh, eighth and ninth Apartments. Tenth Apartment. Eleventh, or Emperor's Apartment. His three Queens, and Women. Twelfth, thirteenth and fourteenth Apartments. Fifteenth Apartment. Sixteenth Apartment. Seventeenth Apartment.

^a *Navarette's* Description of *China*, Chap. 6. p. 13.

^b The *Chinese* Cubit is to a *Parisian* Foot, as seven to eight; so that the Diameter must be thirteen Feet one-eighth, and the Circumference forty-one Feet one-fourth.

^c *Magalhaens's* Relation of *China*, p. 123.

^d Rather, Hammers, which Men strike with.

^e *Le Comte's* Memoirs of *China*, p. 80, & seq.

^f The Editor, in his Notes, shews, that the Bell of *Roan*, two in *Paris*, &c. are bigger.

^g The Editor observes, that *Rougechou*, the Jesuit, in his History, tells us, that *Schaal* caused two Bells at *Pe-king* to be craned up into a Tower an hundred and thirty one and one-fourth *Paris*-Feet high, by the Help of two hundred Workmen; and, two Years after, a third Bell, with only an hundred and twenty Men. This, possibly, is the Bell in Question.

^h *Magalhaens*, as before.

ⁱ This, we may presume, is one of the Jesuits Lies; with what View, does not appear.

^j *Navarette*, as before.

^k *Magalhaens*, as before, p. 124.

^l *Navarette*, as before.

^m Of this *Kircher* gives the Cut in his *China illustrata*, p. 222.

ⁿ In his Account of *Muscovy*, in Latin.

^o *Magalhaens*, as before, p. 127.

Bell of Pe king .

Bell of Erford .



enth, nineteenth, and twentieth Apartment. First Court. Second Court. Third Their Buildings. Fourth Court. Fifth Sixth, seventh, and eighth Courts. Court. Splendour of the Palace. Other The double Roofs. The Terrasses. Hall of Audience. The Throne. Two Walls. Magazines of Rarities. The

The imperial Palace stands about the Middle of the old or Tartar City. Its Figure is a long Square. The East, North and West Sides near equally distant from the City-Walls^a; but its South or Front-side, is Two-thirds nearer the South Wall of the same City; as appears from the Plan.

Outer Palace and Wall. THIS Palace is divided into two, the outer and the inner; each enclosed with a separate Wall, called likewise, by Authors, the outer, and the inner. The outward Palace is an oblong Square, about fifteen Li (or four Miles three Quarters) in Compass. The Wall inclosing it, is called *Whang-ching*, or the *Imperial Wall*. *Du Halde* says, it is low and narrow^b. But *Magalhaens* affirms, it is of an extraordinary Height and Thickness^c. He adds, that it is plaistered, both within and without, with red Mortar; and covered with a small coping of varnished Bricks of a yellow Gold-Colour, laid with great Art and Exactness. The Length of it, from the South to the North Gate, is eight Chinese Furlongs, or two Italian Miles^d.

The Gates. THIS Wall is adorned with large Gates, where there are Guards. Its South-Gate is that of the Palace^e itself, being about an hundred Fathoms from the principal Gate of the City, which looks Southward also; and is called by the People *Sven-men*: Although its true Name, which is both in Tartarian and Chinese Characters, is *Yang-men*, that is, the Gate facing the Sun^f. According to *Magalhaens*, the Gate is four, one in the Middle^g of each Side; and every Gate composed of three Portals, of which, the middlemost is always kept shut; and never opened but only for the Emperor. The rest are always open from Break of Day till the Bell rings for clearing the Palace; except the South-Gates, which are never more than half open, but when his Majesty goes out or in. All Manner of Entrance within these Gates is forbidden to the *Bonzas*, the Blind, the Lame, the

a Maimed, the Beggars; such as have Scars and Wens upon their Faces, or have their Ears or Noses cut; and, in a Word, to all those who have any considerable Deformity.

In the Time of the Chinese Kings, there was a Guard of thirty Soldiers with their Captain, and ten Eunuchs at each Portal; but at present not above twenty Tartars with their Officer: So that *Samedo* and *Martini* greatly mistake, who affirm the Guard of every Gate to consist of three thousand Men, and five Elephants; whereas there is only a Guard of three thousand Men in all, who being distributed into Companies and Squadrons, in their Turns, on so many Days in a Month, guard the Gates of the City, and of the Palace, besides the Towers that environ the inner Wall. As for Elephants, they never stand at the Gates, but in their Stables, or rather Palace.

THE same Author says, that this outward Inclosure contains several separate Palaces; some round, others square, but all spacious, rich, and magnificently adorned, fit for some Kings of Europe. In the Part lying West of the inner Palace, which is much larger than that on the East Side, there is a Lake full of Fish, five Furlongs, or an Italian Mile and a Quarter in Length, and made in the Form of a base Viol. Where it is narrowest, it is to be crossed over a very beautiful Bridge, which answers to the Gates of the Walls, at the Ends of which stand two triumphal Arches, of three Arches a-piece; high-raised, majestic, and most excellent Workmanship. This Lake, mentioned by *Marco Polo*^h, is environed with little Palaces, or Houses of Pleasure, built partly in the Water, and partly on the Land, the Middle of the Lake being full of very beautiful Barges for the King's Use when he has a Mind to fish, or to be rowed about the Lake.

THE Remainder of the two East and West Spaces, which is not taken-up by the Lake, or the separate Palaces, is divided into large and well-proportioned Streets, inhabited by the Officers and Artificers in the Emperor's Serviceⁱ. *Le Comte* says the same, and that none but the Eunuchs live in the inner Palace; but adds, that all the Houses are low and ill contrived, far worse than those in the Tartar City^k. *Du Halde* observes, that the Eunuchs dwell within the outward Inclosure, and that the Courts, called *The inner Tribunals*, stand there, for regulating the Affairs of the Palace only^l.

^a About a Mile from the North and West Walls, and one Third more from the East Wall.

^b *Du Halde's China*, p. 67.

^c *Le Comte* says, it is a very good Wall.

^d *Magalhaens's Relation of China*, p. 268.

^e Great Men always chuse to have the Gates or Doors of their Houses facing the South.

^f *Du Halde*, as before.

^g Not exactly in the Middle according to the Plan.

^h Lib. 2. cap. 6.

ⁱ *Magalhaens*, as before, p. 268, & seq.

^k *Le Comte's Memoirs of China*, p. 59.

^l *Du Halde*, as before.

The Geogra-
phy.

The Eunuchs.

Inner Wall.

Guards.

ACCORDING to *Magalhaens*, there dwelt formerly, in this outer Inclosure, ten thousand Eunuchs^a, besides the other Inhabitants: But that they, who reign at present, have put in their Rooms *Tartars*, and *Chinese* of the Province of *Lyau-tong*, who are looked upon as *Tartars* by a peculiar Favour^b. *Navarette* observes, that when *Shun-chi*, Father to the present Emperor, died, they turned-out of the Palace six thousand Eunuchs; and conceives they expelled as many Women, for every Eunuch has a Woman to wait on him^c. The Reason was, their Power and Insolence became insupportable to the Princes of the Empire, but they are now very inconsiderable: The youngest serve as Pages; the others are put to the vilest Employments, their Task being to sweep the Rooms, and keep them clean. They are severely punished by their Overseers, who never pass-by the least Fault^d.

THE inner Wall, which immediately encompasses the Palace where the Emperor resides, is extremely high and thick, built with large Brick, and embellished with Battlements well contrived. It extends from South^e to North six Furlongs, or an *Italian* Mile and an half; it is a Furlong and an half in Breadth, and fifteen Furlongs, or five Miles wanting a Quarter, in Circumference^f. It has four Gates with large Arches, those to the South and North being threefold, like the Gates of the first Inclosure; those upon the Sides, single. Upon these Gates, and upon the four Angles of the Wall, eight Towers, or rather Halls^g, of an extraordinary Bigness, and very good Workmanship, advance themselves; varnished within with a very beautiful Red, adorned with Flowers of Gold, and covered with Tiles varnished with Yellow. During the Reign of the *Chinese* Kings, twenty Eunuchs kept Guard at each of these Gates, but at present forty Soldiers, with two Officers^h. The Officers of the Household and *Mandarins* of the Tribunals within the Palace are allowed Entrance within this Wall: But all others are severely prohibitedⁱ, unless

they shew a little Tablet of Wood or Ivory whereon their Names and Place of Abode are set-down, with the Seal of the *Mandarin* whom they belong. This second Wall is environed with a deep and wide Mote, lined with Freestone, and full of large and excellent Fish. Every Gate has a Draw-bridge to lay over the Mote, the South Gate excepted, where the Draw-bridge lies only over one Arch.

CLOSE by the Eastern Wall, on the outside runs a River, over which are built several very fair Bridges, all of Marble, except the Arch in the Middle, where there is a Draw-bridge. There is a great Number of such Bridges in the Palace^k.

WE cannot propose to give our Readers so satisfactory an Account of this grand Palace, as willingly we would do: For *Magalhaens's* Description, though the only one which extends to the Whole, is somewhat confused for want of a Plan; that which his ingenious Editor has contrived not being exact enough. The other Missioners are not only defective, but differ somewhat from one another as to the Dimension, Situation, Order and Form of the Courts and Apartments^l. Perhaps they mistook some Things in trusting to their Memories. Besides *Magalhaens*, there is another quoted by *du Halde*, who describes the Courts as far as the Emperor's Apartment, where they had the Honour, with other Jesuits, to salute his Majesty; and these two are all who furnished Particulars of them: But to prevent Confusion, we must give each separately; for the first divides the Palace into Apartments, the second (as all the other Missioners do) by Courts: Besides, there seems to be some Mistake in ranging them in one of their Accounts.

FOR the better apprehending the Situation of the several Parts of this Palace, it must be observed, says *Magalhaens*, that between the outward Inclosure of the Palace and South Wall of the City, where stands the principal Gate, there is a large Space belonging to the Palace, and

^a *Le Comte* says, the whole Palace was inhabited by them.

^b *Navarette's* Description of *China*, chap. 6. p. 12.

^c By the Plan it consists of two long Squares, one as broad again as the other, and an equilateral Square. *Navarette* says, the Wall that incloses the Palace is in the Shape of an half Moon.

^d *Du Halde* calls them Pavilions, and says, those over the Gates are more strong and lofty, and surrounded with a Gallery supported by Pillars, resembling our Peristyle.

^e *Le Comte* says, that the Guards placed in the Gates and Avenues of the Palace have no other Arms but their Simitars, and are not so numerous as he at first imagined. See his *Memoirs of China*, p. 60.

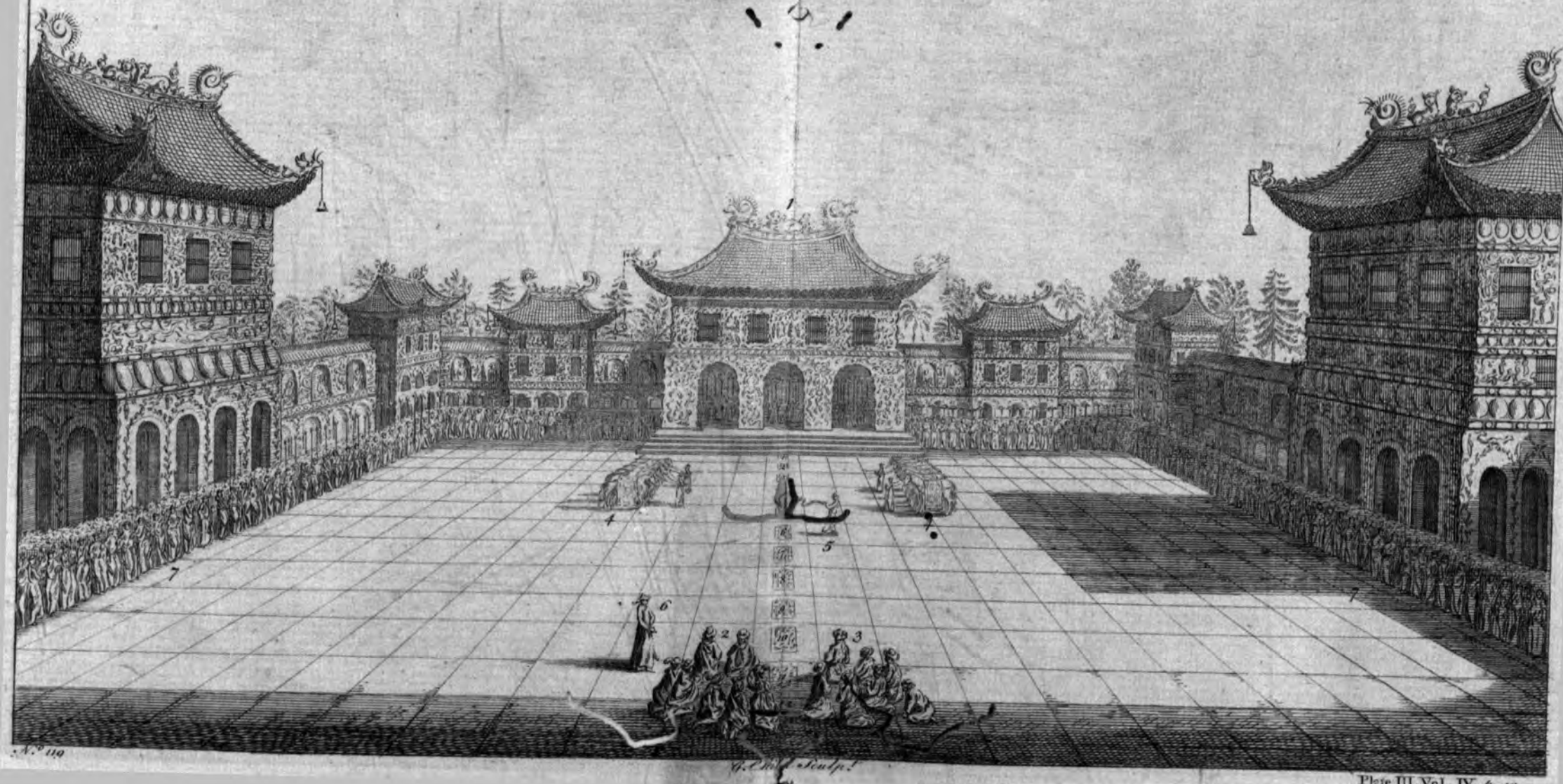
^f *Navarette* observes, that of twenty-four Missionaries, who met at *Pe-king* in the Year 1665, only *John Adamus*, (or *Schaal*) then Professor of Mathematics, had ever been within the Palace. Afterwards, about 1668 and 69, the three who remained there were admitted, being sent for by the Emperor. See his Description of *China*, chap. 6. p. 12.

^g *Magalhaens*, as before, p. 269, & seqq. ^h For Instance, *le Comte* says, the inner Palace is made-up of nine Courts, whereas *Magalhaens* describes twenty: Nor can we find any Court and Hall of the Throne, such as *le Comte* describes; and the rather, because he does not tell us which of the nine they were.

- 1 The Palace where is the Imperial Throne
- 2 The 2 Dutch Ambassadors.
- 3 Great Mogol's Ambassadors.
- 4 Twelve white Horses.
- 5 Tartar with a leathern Snake.
- 6 The Herold.
- 7 Emperor's Guard.

SUPREME IMPERIAL HALL OF AUDIENCE
from N. Hof:

Vol. 3. p. 427



G. C. M. de Sculp.

tried after the following Manner : You enter a City into a large Street, which extends the Length of the Wall; and having croſſed it, you come into a ſquare Piazza, environed with a Barade of Marble. Beyond this there is a ſecond Street, where appear two triumphal Arches, one on each Hand. Paſſengers are not permitted to go either in a Sedan, or on Horſeback, without the Space between theſe Arches, but muſt walk a-foot till they have paſſed them; Reſpect to the Emperor's firſt Apartment, which ſtands on the other Side of the Street at an equal Diſtance between the two Arches.

^{1. Apartment.} THIS firſt Apartment is called *Tay-tſing-mwen*; or, *The Portal of great Purity*. It conſiſts of three great Gates with three Arches, very long and large, above which is a very fair Hall. Theſe Gates are never opened but when his Maſteſty goes out of Town. Beyond this Apartment there is a vaſt Court adorned on both Sides with Porticos, ſupported by two hundred Pillars; which, being ſeen from the Gate, afford a grand and pleaſing Perſpective. This Court, which is two Bow-Shots broad, and above twice a Muſket-Shot in Length, is bounded on the North Side by the famous Street of *Perpetual Repoſe*, which paſſes through two Gates: That on the right Hand is called *The Oriental Gate of the Street of perpetual Repoſe*; that on the left, *The Weſtern Gate*. What has been hitherto deſcribed, is without the exterior Wall of the Palace, and only ſerves for a Portico, or Avenue, but ſo maſteſtical, that it challenges an awful Reſpect.

^{2. Apartment.} THENCE going-on, you ſee, in the Middle of the exterior Wall, the ſecond Portal and Apartment; which ought rather to be called the firſt, becauſe all who enter the Palace, are obliged to go through it. It is compoſed of five Gates, three great ones which never open but for the Emperor, and two ſmall ones on each Side, one raiſed at the Bottom about the Height of a Step above the Ground, through which all who go-in and out muſt paſs, even the great Lords themſelves. Above theſe Gates, as above all the reſt, ſtands a large Hall, adorned with a great Number of Columns, with Baſes and Chapiters gilded, and painted; on the Outſide with Vermilion Varniſh, withinſide with a Varniſh of Gold and Azure. Beyond this Apartment lies a Court^a, incomparably more ſpacious than the former, on the Eaſt and Weſt Sides filled-up with Halls and Chambers that have their Porticos and Galleries, as have all the reſt already mentioned.

^a This ſhould be the firſt Court of *du Halde's* Author. Author, but then the Mote and Bridges will be miſplaced. according to *du Halde's* Author, *Iſbrand Ides*, and others, who place the Hall of the Throne in the fifth Court, as this properly is from the Entrance of the Palace.

AT the End of this Court is the Apartment called *The Portal of the Beginning*, and behind it another Court; at the End of which is the Apartment, called *The Tower or Portal of the South*, which is the firſt within the inner Wall. This Apartment conſiſts of three vaſt Arches, and a Hall above them; the Architecture of which is like to that of the third, but the Structure is larger, more lofty, and more maſteſtic. On the two Sides it has two Walls built in the Form of Galleries, that extend themſelves toward the South a full Muſket-Shot in Length; and at both Ends, North and South, are bounded by four Pavilions, or Halls, like thoſe in the Middle, but much leſs. The Roofs are hexagonal, or ſloping fix Ways, and are beautified at the Top with Dogs of Braſs gilded. All which five Buildings together beget a ſtrange Surprize, cauſing both Aſtoniſhment and Reverence by Means of their Grandeur and their Riches. In the Middle of this great middlemoſt Hall it is where the Drum and the Bell hang-up, which have been deſcribed before.

BEYOND this lies another Court like the former, at the End of which ſtands the fifth Apartment, called *The ſupreme Portal*. To this Apartment belong five large and maſteſtic Gates, to which you aſcend by five Pair of Stairs of thirty Steps a-piece: But before you come at it, you muſt croſs a deep Mote full of Water over five Bridges, that anſwer to the five Pair of Stairs; both the one and the other beautified with Parapets, Baluſters, Columns, Pilasters, and ſquare Baſes, with Lions and other Ornainents, all of very fine and very white Marble: So that it is not without good Reaſon that this Apartment carries the Name of *The ſupreme Portal*, as being more magnificent and maſteſtic than all the reſt. Beyond it lies another very ſpacious Court^b, garniſhed on both Sides with Porticos and Galleries, Halls and other Rooms, very noble, ſtately, and rich.

AT the End of this Court is *The ſupreme imperial Hall*^c, to which you aſcend by five Pair of Stairs; each Pair of forty Steps, all of very fine Marble and coſtly Workmanſhip. The Pair in the Middle, which the Emperor only aſcends, is of an extraordinary Breadth: The two Pair on each Side, appointed for the great Lords and *Mandarins*, are not ſo broad; and the other two, which are the narroweſt, ſerve for the Eunuchs and Officers of the Houſhold. They tell us, that under the Reign of the *Chineſe* Emperors,

^b This ſhould be the third Court of *du Halde's*

^c By this it ſhould be the fifth Court, according to *du Halde's* Author, *Iſbrand Ides*, and others, who place the Hall of the Throne in the fifth Court, as this properly is from the Entrance of the Palace.

*The Geogra-
phy.*

*Imperial
Throne.*

*Seventh,
eighth, and
ninth Apart-
ments.*

*Tenth Apart-
ment.*

*Eleventh or
Emperor's
Apartment.*

this Hall was one of the Wonders of the World for its Beauty, Riches, and Spaciousness; but that the Robbers, who rebelled during the last Revolution, burnt it, together with a great Part of the Palace, when they abandoned *Pe-king* for fear of the *Tartars*, and these latter were contented that it should only, in some Measure, resemble what it was before; yet there is that in it still which serves to fill the Imagination, and display the Grandeur of the Emperor. In this Hall it is that the Prince, being seated in his Throne, receives the Homages of all his great Lords, and all his *Mandarins*, both learned and military; who, as fast as they come to the Place, take their Stands, according to their Rank and Quality, in Places appointed for every one of the nine Orders, which are marked and written-down at the Bottom of little Pillars^a. *Adams* says, these Pillars are of Brass, and square^b.

BEYOND the imperial Hall is another Court, which leads to the seventh Apartment, called *The high-raised Hall*. From hence you enter another Court, which brings to the eighth Apartment, called *The supreme Hall in the Middle*. Thence, passing cross another Court, you come to *The Hall of Sovereign Concord*. To this Hall, and two more on each Side, the Emperor comes twice a Year, Morning and Afternoon, to treat of the Affairs of the whole Empire with his *Ko lau*, or *Counsellors of State*, and *Mandarins* of the six supreme Tribunals. For this Reason, at the East End of this Hall, there is a very fair Palace for the Tribunal, called *Kyu-ywen*, or *The Tribunal within*, composed of Counsellors of State, and above three hundred *Mandarins* of all Degrees; which makes it superior to all the other Tribunals of the Empire.

FROM hence, passing into another Court, you come to the tenth Apartment, with a fair and very high-raised Portal, called *The Portal of Heaven, clear and without Blemish*. There are three great Gates in the Middle, to which you ascend by three Pair of Stairs, each Pair containing above forty Steps, having two little Doors on both Sides, as all the Gates of these Apartments have.

THIS Portal carries you into a spacious Court, bounded by the eleventh Apartment, called *The Mansion of Heaven, clear and without Blemish*, which is the richest, highest-raised, and the most sumptuous of all. There are five Ascents to it of very fine Marble, each containing five and forty Steps, adorned with Pillars, Parapets, Balusters, and several little Lions. At the Top on

a both Sides are ten large Lions of gilded Brass, excellent Pieces of Workmanship. In the Middle of the Court, at a proportionable Distance from the Stairs, stands a Tower of Brass, gilt, which has Doors and Windows, is round and ends in a Point, being about fifteen Foot high. It is adorned with Abundance of small Figures curiously engraven; and on each Side stand two large Chafers of gilded Brass, and curiously wrought, where they burn Incense Day and Night. In this sumptuous Apartment the Emperor resides with his three Queens: The first, called *Whang hew*, that is, the *Queen*, or *Empress*, lives with him in the middle Quarter: The second, called *Tong kong*, has her Lodgings in the Eastern Quarter; and the third, called *Si kong*, in the Western Quarter, which, as well as the Eastern, joins to that of the Middle. In this Apartment also, and in the rest mentioned hereafter, there are generally residing a thousand, sometimes two, and sometimes three thousand Concubines, according to the Emperor's Pleasure.

IN Reference to this Apartment, it is farther to be observed, that as the Houses, so are the porcelain Ware, Moveables, Habits, and all other Things for the Service of the Emperor, adorned with Dragons. In like Manner all the Structures where he resides have Relation to the Heavens, either in Name, Number, or some other Way. Thus this last Apartment is called *The ninth Heaven*, and not the eleventh, by the *Chinese*, in regard, they never reckon that which is without the outermost Inclosure of the Palace; and for that they make but one of *The Portal of Heaven, serene and without Blemish*, and this last Apartment^c. In order, likewise, to answer to the twelve Signs, the particular Places where the Emperor resides are twelve in Number; three of which stand in a straight Line from North to South^d; the rest stand upon the East and West Side, and are so spacious, as well as so stately, that one single Apartment might suffice a King.

BEYOND this eleventh Apartment lies another Court, and next to that stands the twelfth Apartment or second Lodging of the Emperor, called *The noble and beautiful middle Mansion*. From thence you pass to another Court, in which is the thirteenth Apartment, or his Majesty's third Lodging, called *The Mansion that entertains Heaven*. Behind that lies the imperial Garden, most beautiful and spacious, which makes the fourteenth Apartment. After this you meet with several Courts and other large Spaces, which having

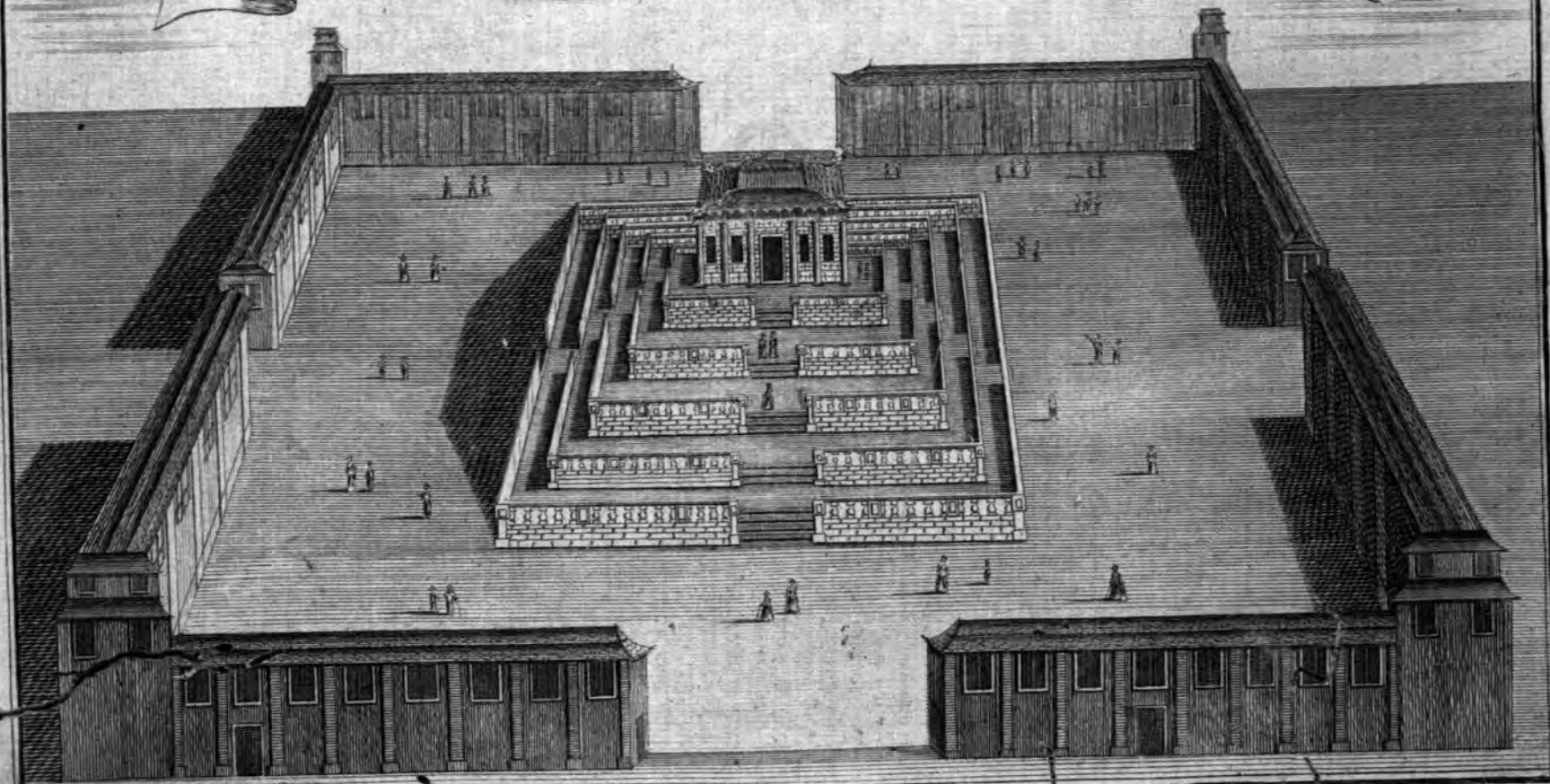
^a *Magalhães's Relation of China*, p. 281, & seqq.
the two first Apartments are made so by the Author, and that the *Chinese* reckon rather by Courts, (as the other Missioners do) or by Walls, for they say their Emperor lies behind nine Walls.
to North, as the Author now proceeds.

^b The same, p. 298.

^c This shews, that
^d Rather from South

THE GREAT IMPERIAL THRONE.

from
Le Comte



G. Child Sculp.

Pl. 20. Vol. 4. p. 14.

The Geogra-
phy.
Fifteenth
Apartment.

crossed, you come to the last Portal of the inner-
most Inclosure, which makes the fifteenth Apart-
ment, and is called *The Portal of the mysterious*
Valour. It consists of three Gates and three great
Arches, which support a very high-raised Hall.
This Hall is painted and gilded, the Top of
whose Roof is crowned with several little Towers
and other Ornaments, so well proportioned and
disposed, that the Whole appears no less majestic
than beautiful.

Sixteenth
Apartment.

PASSING through this, you cross the Mote
over a large and fair Bridge, built all of large
Marble Stones, into a Street that runs from East
to West; bounded on the North by several Pa-
laces and Tribunals. In the Middle, facing the
Bridge, there is a Portal with three Gates, some-
thing less than the preceding Portals; and this is
the sixteenth Apartment, called *The high-raised*
Portal of the South^a. Beyond it lies a Court
thirty Fathoms broad from South to North, and
a *Chinese Furlong* in Length from East to West.
Here the Emperor exercises his Horses; and
therefore it is not paved as the other Courts,
Streets, and Spaces are, of which we have
spoken; but only covered with Earth and Gra-
vel, which is watered when his Majesty has a
Mind to ride.

Seventeenth
Apartment.

IN the Midst of the North Wall of this Court
stands a large Portal with five Gates, like the
former, which makes the seventeenth Apartment,
and is called *The Portal of ten thousand Years*,
that is to say, *The Emperor's Portal*. A little
farther you meet with a spacious Park, where
this Monarch keeps his wild Beasts, Bears, wild
Boars, Tygers, and the like; every one in their
particular Stands, large and beautiful. In the
Midst of this Park are five Hillocks^b, two to
the East, two to the West, (all four sloping
equally quite round) and one in the Middle
higher than the rest. They were made by Hand,
of the Earth digged out of the Mote and Lake
before-mentioned, and are covered over with
Trees planted in Order. Every one of these has
a round or square Pedestal, wherein several Holes
are cut for the Rabbits to burrow, and Hares to
fit; of which those little Hills are full. The
Emperor often visits this Place to see the Deer
and the Goats run-about, and hear the Birds
sing. Within Musket-Shot of this Place stands
a very thick Wood; at the End of which, ad-
joining to the North-Wall of the Park, are to
be seen three Houses of Pleasure, with lovely
Stairs and Terrasses to go from one to the other.
This is a Structure truly royal, the Architecture
being exquisite, and makes the eighteenth Apart-
ment; being called *The royal Palace of long Life*.

Eighteenth
Apartment.

A little farther stands a Portal like the former,
which makes the nineteenth Apartment, and is
called *The high-raised Portal of the North*. Out
of this you come into a long and broad Street,
adorned on both Sides with Palaces and Tribu-
nals; beyond which stands another Portal with
three Gates, built within the outermost Inclo-
sure, and is called *The Portal of the Repose of the*
North. This is the last and twentieth of these
Apartments that make up the imperial Palace, in
a strait Line, from South to North^c.

Province,
Pe-che-li.

THE Account given by the Missioner, quoted
by *Du Halde*, of the nine Courts, lying before the
Emperor's Apartment, is as follows: He entered
the Palace with the other Missioners, by the East
Gate of the Portal; the Southern Gate being
never opened but for the Emperor. This led
into a vast square Court to the South of the Pa-
lace, two hundred geometrical Paces over. It
is paved with large Bricks, and the Walks laid
with broad flat Stones. At each Angle is a large
oblong Building, with a double Roof, whose
Ground-Story has three Entrances, like the Gates
of Cities.

BEFORE they entered the second Court, they
came to a Canal, almost dry, running parallel to
the Walls of it from East to West. They cross-
ed over one of the six^d white Marble Bridges,
built towards the Middle, facing so many Arches
or open Gates; each supporting a large Building
that has a Platform or Tower, with a double
Roof, whose Thickness is upwards of twenty
geometrical Paces. At each End of the Bridge,
leading to the Middle Gate, are two round Pil-
lars of white Marble, upon a large Pedestal, in-
compassed with a Balustrade of the same. The
Base is adorned with two great Lions, each be-
tween seven or eight Feet high, and seeming as
if they had been cut out of one Block. Passing
Northward, through the Gate, into this second
Court, (which is in Length about an hundred
geometrical Paces, and fifty in Breadth) they
found, at the Entrance, two other white Marble
Columns, adorned with Dragons in Relief, with
two small Wings below a Chapter, which
is flat and very broad.

FROM thence they entered a third Court,
twice the Length of the second, and a little
wider, with five Gates, and Buildings over them,
like the former. These Gates are very thick,
and covered with Plates of Iron, fastened-on
with Rows of Brads Nails, whose Heads are big-
ger than a Man's Fist. All the Buildings of the
Palace are placed on Bases, as high as a Man, of
a reddish grey Marble, very ill polished, and
adorned with Mouldings.

^a That of the North, comes after. ^b These Hills are mentioned by *Marco Polo*, lib. 2. cap. 16. ^c *Ma-*
galhaens's Relation of China, p. 289, & seq. ^d Rather, five; that being generally the Number of Gates.

The Geogra-
phy.

ther, vast Quantities of the most beautiful Skins : a third contains Habits, furred with the Skins of grey Squirrels, Foxes, Ermines, and Sables; wherewith the Emperor sometimes rewards his Servants. There is one for precious Stones, curious Marbles, and Pearls, which are found in Tartary. The greatest of all, consisting of two low Stories, is full of Presses, where the Silks are kept; made on Purpose, for the Use of the Emperor and his Family, at *Nan-king*, *Hang-chew-fu*, and *Su-chew-fu*, under the Direction of a Mandarin. In the other Storehouses are deposited Arrows, Bows, and Saddles, which have either been made at *Pe-king*, brought from foreign Countries, or presented by great Princes; and set apart for the Use of some Emperor and his Children. There is one also where they collect the best Tea of every Kind that *China* produces, with various Simples, and other the most esteemed Drugs.

The Gallery.

THIS Gallery has five Doors; one to the East, another to the West, and three in the South Front. Those in the Middle are never opened but for the Emperor; the Mandarins, who come to perform the Ceremony before the imperial Hall, entering by the Side-Doors. There is nothing extraordinary in this Front. It has a large Court, into which one descends by a Marble Stair-case, adorned with two great Lions of Copper, and a Balustrade of white Marble. It is made in the Form of a Horseshoe, on the Side of a little serpentine River, which runs through the Palace; and has Bridges over it of the same Materials.

3. Other Palaces, and Temples, both within and without the Wall of the inner Palace.

Other Palaces within the inner Wall. Statues of ancient Kings. Palace of the Princes: Of Love and Union. Their Form and Order. Outward Palaces. Uncommon Virtue. Admirable Bridge. Folly of an Emperor. The Hare in the Moon. Palaces of Pleasure, and Diversion. Temples: The first. Obscene Idol. Temple of Heaven. Temples of the Earth, Sun, and Moon. Of the Guardian Angel.

Other Palaces.

ON each Side of the Palace, designed for the Emperor's Person, there are erected several others; many of which, for their Beauty, Splendour, and Largeness, might well serve for the Mansions of great Princes. For the better apprehending of their Situation^b, it is to be ob-

served, that the Space which the inner Wall incloses, is divided into three distinct Parts, by two great and high Walls that run from South to North. The imperial Palace possesses the middle Space; and the collateral Palaces, the other two. These Partition-Walls have no Battlements, but are coped with yellow varnished Tiles; and the Top is raised and trimmed with a thousand Designs and Figures of the same Materials and Colour. From the Eaves of this little Roof, on both Sides, hang Dragons in Demi-Relief. The rest of the Wall is covered with square Tiles, green, yellow, and blue; so ranged, as to represent Beasts, Flowers, and Horns. As to the Palaces which are separated one from the other, by Walls of the same Kind; each of them has four Apartments, with their Courts, and a royal Hall in the Middle, with Stairs and an open Gallery round about, of white Marble; like those of the Emperor's Palace, but much less. The Courts are adorned on each Side with Halls and Chambers of exquisite Architecture; and painted within-side with Vermilion Varnish, intermixed with Gold and Azure.

THE first Palace, is called *Ven-wha-tyen*, or *The Palace of flourishing Learning*. Hither the Emperor retires when he has a Mind to discourse with his Men of Learning, to consult about his most important Affairs, or to keep the Fasts most usually observed in *China*. It is placed on the East Side of the sixth Apartment of the Emperor's Palace, called *The supreme imperial Hall*.

THE second Palace is just over-against the former, on the West Side of the same imperial Hall, and is called *Vu-ing-tyen*, or *The Palace of the Council of War*. Here the Emperor holds Consultations when the Kingdom is alarmed by any Revolt, by Pirates, or the Inroads of the Tartars upon the Frontiers.

THE third (or second, on the East Side^d) is called *Tong-syen-tyen*, or *The Palace where Honour is paid to the deceased Emperors of the reigning Family*. Those Monarchs are seated upon their Thrones in a magnificent Hall, adorned with Stairs, Galleries, and all other Conveniences, like the rest. Their Statues are made of Eagle-Wood, Saunders, or some other odoriferous Wood, and cloathed in rich Habits. Before the Images are placed sumptuous Tables, with Candelsticks, Chafers, and other costly Ornaments. Upon the Day of Ceremony, there is an Offering made them, of several Tables covered with exquisite Viands.

THE fourth Palace, (or second on the West

Province,
Pe-che-li.

Within the
inner Wall.

Statues of
ancient
Kings.

^a Du Halde's *China*, vol. 1. p. 68, &c.

marked, except that of the first.

^d Proceeding Northward, as the Editor judges.

^b But the particular Situation of none of them is distinctly marked, except that of the first.

^c At the End of the Notes, they are said to be twenty four.

The Geogra-
phy.
Other Pala-
ces.

The double
Roofs.

The Terras-
ses.

Imperial
Hall of Au-
dience.

IF to these we add, the Courts that have been made on the Wings, for Offices and Stables; the Palaces of the Princes of the Blood, with those of the Empress, and of the Women; the Gardens, Ponds, Lakes, and Woods, in which are kept all Sorts of Animals, the Whole will appear surprizing ^a.

BEFORE we proceed to give an Account of the remaining Structures and Apartments of the Palace, we have a few Words to add concerning the Roofs of these Buildings, the Terrasses or Platforms whereon they stand, and the great imperial Hall of the Throne.

THE Roofs have four Sides, rising very high, adorned on the Rest with a Plat-band of Flower-work, and turned-up at the Ends. A second Roof, as glittering as the former, rising from the Walls, goes quite around, supported by a Forest of Beams, Joists, and Spars, all japanned with green Varnish, strewed with Gold Figures. This second Roof, with the Projection of the first, makes a Kind of Crown to those Buildings, which has a very fine Effect.

THE Terrasses or Platforms, whereon these Apartments are built, contribute also much to give them that Air of Grandeur which strikes the Eye. They are about fifteen Feet high from the Ground, cased with white Marble, adorned with Balustrades of pretty good Workmanship, and open only at the Entrance of the Stair-cases, which are placed on the Sides, in the Middle, and in the Corners of the Front. The Ascent in the Middle is, properly, no more than a Ramp or Slope, consisting of one or two Pieces of Marble, without either Steps or Restings. Nobody is permitted to enter this Way into the Apartments but the Emperor alone; who, upon Days of Ceremony, is carried through in his covered Chair. These Terrasses, which extend from East to West, make, before the Doors and Windows of the Apartments, a very broad Platform, paved with Marble, projecting seven or eight Feet all the Way beyond the Building. This is the Form of the Apartments or Lodgings of the Emperor, and of the imperial Hall, named *Tay-ho-tyen*, or *The Hall of the great Union* ^b.

THIS Hall is about one hundred and thirty Feet long, and almost square. The Cieling is all of carved Work, varnished with green, and charged with gilded Dragons. The Pillars, that support the Roof within, are six or seven Feet in Compass at the Bottom, and incrustated with a

Kind of Paste, japanned with red Varnish. The Pavement is covered partly with very ordinary Carpets, made like those of *Turkey*. The Walls are very well white-washed; but without Hangings, Looking-Glasses, Branches, Paintings, or any other Sort of Ornament.

THE Throne, which is in the Middle of the Hall, consists of a lofty Alcove, very neat, but neither rich nor magnificent; and without any Inscription, but the Word *Shing*, that is, *excellent*, *perfect*, or *most wise* &c. On the Platform or Floor before it, stand very great and thick Vessels of Brass (wherein Perfumes are burnt during the Ceremony) and Candlesticks, made in the Form of Birds, large enough to hold Flambeaux. This Platform is continued Northward beyond the Hall *Tay-ho-tyen*, and serves as a Foundation to two lesser Halls, which are hidden by the former. One of them is a very pretty Rotundo, or circular Room, with Windows on every Side, and shining with Varnish of divers Colours. There, they say, the Emperor repofes sometimes, before or after the Ceremony, and changes his Habit.

THE round Hall is but a few Paces distant from a second, that is longer than broad; the Door of which faces the North. Through this Door the Emperor is obliged to pass, when he comes from his Apartment to his Throne; there to receive the Homages of the whole Empire. He is then carried in a Chair, by Chairmen dressed in long red Vests, embroidered with Silk, and wearing Caps adorned with Plumes.

IN the Bass-Court, before the *Tay-ho-tyen*, the *Mandarins* range themselves, on Days appointed for the Ceremonies prescribed by the Laws of the Empire, to renew their Homage; which Ceremonies are performed whether the Emperor be present or not. Nothing is more usual than for them to strike the Ground with their Foreheads, before the Gate of the Palace, or one of the royal Halls, with the same Formality and Respect as if he was seated on his Throne.

THIS Court is the largest belonging to the Palace; it is, at least, three hundred Feet long, and two hundred and fifty wide ^c. Over the Gallery that surrounds it, are the imperial Magazines of Rarities: For the Treasure or Revenues of the Empire are kept in the supreme Tribunal, named *Hu-pa*. These Magazines are opened upon certain Occasions; as at the Creation of a Prince, who is to inherit the Crown, an Empress, Queen, &c. In one, are kept the Vases, and other Works, of different Metal; in ano-

^a Du Halde's China, vol. 1. p. 245, & seq.

^b Rather than *holy*, as Authors render it.

^c This is what *Magalhaens* calls *The supreme imperial Hall*.

^d The Missioners Description, given before, makes some of the Courts, as the first and third, two hundred Paces long, and the three following only eighty: But that Number making four hundred Feet, the least of the other Courts, if there be no Mistake in the Figuring, must be bigger than this; and some near three Times as large.

*The Geogra-
phy.*

ther, vast Quantities of the most beautiful Skins : a third contains Habits, furred with the Skins of grey Squirrels, Foxes, Ermins, and Sables; wherewith the Emperor sometimes rewards his Servants. There is one for precious Stones, curious Marbles, and Pearls, which are found in Tartary. The greatest of all, consisting of two low Stories, is full of Presses, where the Silks are kept; made on Purpose, for the Use of the Emperor and his Family, at Nan-king, Hang-chew fü, and Sü-chew fü, under the Direction of a Mandarin. In the other Storehouses are repositd Arrows, Bows, and Saddles, which have either been made at Pe-king, brought from foreign Countries, or presented by great Princes; and set apart for the Use of some Emperor and his Children. There is one also where they collect the best Tea of every Kind that China produces, with various Simples, and other the most esteemed Drugs.

The Gallery.

THIS Gallery has five Doors; one to the East, another to the West, and three in the South Front. Those in the Middle are never opened but for the Emperor; the Mandarins, who come to perform the Ceremony before the imperial Hall, entering by the Side-Doors. There is nothing extraordinary in this Front. It has a large Court, into which one descends by a Marble Stair-case, adorned with two great Lions of Copper, and a Balustrade of white Marble. It is made in the Form of a Horseshoe, on the Side of a little serpentine River, which runs through the Palace; and has Bridges over it of the same Materials.

3. Other Palaces, and Temples, both within and without the Wall of the inner Palace.

Other Palaces within the inner Wall. Statues of ancient Kings. Palace of the Princes: Of Love and Union. Their Form and Order. Outward Palaces. Uncommon Virtue. Admirable Bridge. Folly of an Emperor. The Hare in the Moon. Palaces of Pleasure, and Diversion. Temples: The first. Obscene Idol. Temple of Heaven. Temples of the Earth, Sun, and Moon. Of the Guardian Angel.

Other Palaces.

ON each Side of the Palace, designed for the Emperor's Person, there are erected several others; many of which, for their Beauty, Splendour, and Largeness, might well serve for the Mansions of great Princes. For the better apprehending of their Situation ^b, it is to be ob-

served, that the Space which the inner Wall incloses, is divided into three distinct Parts, by two great and high Walls that run from South to North. The imperial Palace possesses the middle Space; and the collateral Palaces, the other two. These Partition-Walls have no Battlements, but are coped with yellow varnished Tiles; and the Top is raised and trimmed with a thousand Designs and Figures of the same Materials and Colour. From the Eves of this little Roof, on both Sides, hang Dragons in Demi-Relief. The rest of the Wall is covered with square Tiles, green, yellow, and blue; so ranged, as to represent Beasts, Flowers, and Horns. As to the Palaces which are separated one from the other, by Walls of the same Kind; each of them has four Apartments ^c, with their Courts, and a royal Hall in the Middle, with Stairs and an open Gallery round about, of white Marble; like those of the Emperor's Palace, but much less. The Courts are adorned on each Side with Halls and Chambers of exquisite Architecture; and painted within-side with Vermilion Varnish, intermixed with Gold and Azure.

THE first Palace, is called *Ven-wba-tyen*, or *The Palace of flourishing Learning*. Hither the Emperor retires when he has a Mind to discourse with his Men of Learning, to consult about his most important Affairs, or to keep the Fasts most usually observed in China. It is placed on the East Side of the sixth Apartment of the Emperor's Palace, called *The supreme imperial Hall*.

THE second Palace is just over-against the former, on the West Side of the same imperial Hall, and is called *Vu-ing-tyen*, or *The Palace of the Council of War*. Here the Emperor holds Consultations when the Kingdom is alarmed by any Revolt, by Pirates, or the Inroads of the Tartars upon the Frontiers.

THE third (or second, on the East Side ^d) is called *Tong-syen-tyen*, or *The Palace where Honour is paid to the deceased Emperors of the reigning Family*. Those Monarchs are seated upon their Thrones in a magnificent Hall, adorned with Stairs, Galleries, and all other Conveniences, like the rest. Their Statues are made of Eagle-Wood, Saunders, or some other odoriferous Wood, and cloathed in rich Habits. Before the Images are placed sumptuous Tables, with Candlesticks, Chafers, and other costly Ornaments. Upon the Day of Ceremony, there is an Offering made them, of several Tables covered with exquisite Viands.

THE fourth Palace, (or second on the West

^a Du Haldé's China, vol. 1. p. 68, &c.

marked, except that of the two first.

^d Proceeding Northward, as the Editor judges.

^b But the particular Situation of none of them is distinctly

^c At the End of the Notes, they are said to be twenty four.

The Geogra- phy. Side) is called *Jin-chi-tyen*, or *The Palace of Mercy and Prudence*, where the Funeral Honours are paid to the Emperor after his Decease. *Palaces of the Princes.* *called Hong-te-tyen^a, or The Palace of abounding Virtue.* *Province Pe che li.*

THE fifth Palace, or third on the East Side, is called *Tzu-king-kong^a*, or *The Palace of Compassion and Joy*, where the Heir to the Crown resides till the Death of his Father.

THE sixth, or third on the West Side, called *King-ho-kong*, or *The Palace of Union and Flourishing*. Here the second and third Sons of the Emperor reside till they marry.

THE seventh, or fourth oriental Palace, called *Yuen-wen-tyen*, or *The Palace of the royal Nuptials*; because the Nuptials of the King and the Heir to the Crown are there solemnized.

THE eighth Palace, or fourth on the West Side, called *Tsu-nen-kong^b*, or *The Palace of Piety*, being the Residence of the Queen-Mother, and her Maids of Honour.

Queens and Princesses. THE ninth Palace, or fifth to the East, called *Chong-qui-kong*, or *The Palace of Beauty*. The tenth Palace, or fifth to the West, called *Kyang-kong^c*, or *The happy Palace*. These two Palaces are appointed for the Emperor's Sisters and Daughters before they are married.

THE eleventh, or sixth to the East, called *I-wha-tyen*, or *The Palace of due Title*. The twelfth, or sixth Palace to the West, called *Syang-ning-kong*, or *The Palace of Felicity*. The thirteenth, or seventh Palace to the East, called *Jin-shew-kong^d*, or *The Palace of long Life*. The fourteenth, or seventh Palace to the West, called *Kyen-ning-kong*, or *The Palace of celestial Repose*. In these four Palaces the second and third Queen keep their Court, together with the Concubines and other Ladies of the deceased Emperor.

Of Love and Unity. THE fifteenth, or eighth to the East, called *Kya-ta-tyen*, or *The Palace of great Friendship*. The sixteenth, or eighth to the West, called *Quen-ning-kong*, or *The Palace of the Place of Repose*. To one of these Palaces the Emperor retires when he has a Mind to be private with his first Queen.

THE seventeenth Palace, or ninth to the East, called *Ching-chyen-kong^e*, or *The Palace that receives Heaven*. The eighteenth Palace, or ninth to the West, called *I-quen-kong^f*, or *The Palace of the elevated Earth*. To the first of these two Palaces the Emperor retires with his second Queen, and to the second with his third.

THE nineteenth Palace, or tenth to the East, f and was crowned a second Time: Hereupon the

THE twentieth, or tenth Palace to the West, called *Kyu-en-sin-tyen^h*, or *The Palace that envelops the Heart*. In these two Palaces are kept the Emperor's Jewels and Rarities of an inestimable Price.

BESIDES these Palaces, there is an eminent Temple within this Inclosure, which will be described in the next Article. According to the *Their Form and Order.*

later Missioners Accounts, the Palaces of the Emperor's Children and the other Princes of the Blood are very neat within, vastly large, and built at a great Expence. The same Manner runs through the Whole, both as to the Body of the Work and Embellishments. It is a Series of Courts, adorned on the Sides with Buildings, and in Front with a varnished Hall; raised on a Platform three or four Inches high, which is bordered with great square Blocks of hewn Stone, and paved with large square Tiles. The Gates generally open into little Streets^k not much frequented; and have no other Ornaments than two Lions of Brass, or white Stone, of very indifferent Workmanship; without any Order of Architecture, or Sculpture in Stone, such as is found in the triumphal Arches.

ALL the Palaces hitherto mentioned stand within the Wall of the inner Palace. Those that follow are seated between the two Inclosures.

THE first is called *Chung-wha-tyen*, or *The Palace of the double Flower*. It is in Length two Chinese Furlongs, or half an Italian Mile, and had its Name on the following Occasion: About two hundred Years ago, an Emperor going, contrary to the Advice of his People, to fight the Western Tartars, who then ravaged the Province of *Pe-king*, was overthrown, taken, and carried into Tartary^m. The Chinese believing him to be dead, set-up his Brother. Some Months after, Ambassadors coming to demand a Ransom for the captive Monarch and other Prisoners, the new Emperor gave Order to Com- *Uncommon Virtue.* missioners to treat about their Enlargement; and at the same Time appointed a magnificent Palace to be built, whither he intended to retire upon his Brother's Return. However, this the released Emperor would not suffer, but retired thither himself. Three Years after, the new Emperor dying, the former re-ascended the Throne, and was crowned a second Time: Hereupon the

^a In the Notes, *Tsu-kin-cum*.

^d In the Notes, *Gin-chu-cum*.

^e In the Notes, *Long-te-tyen*. p. 303, & seqq.

^f Wall. ¹ Du Halde's China, p. 69.

^b In the Notes, *Tsu-nim-cum*.

^c In the Notes, *Chim-ken-cum*.

^h In the Notes, *Kiun-sin-tien*.

^k These Streets must be those of the outer Palace, and the Gates in the inner Palace

^m See what Evils attend Princes, who act contrary to the Advice of their People! It would be for the Good of both that they had no such Power.

^g In the Text, *Ki-fyam-cum*.

^h In the Notes, *Y-xuen-cum*.

ⁱ Magalhães's Relation of China,

The Geogra-
phy.

Literati, according to Custom, changed his Name to *Tyen-shong*, or *The Prince who followed the Will of Heaven*; and that of the Palace to *Chong-wha-tyen*, alluding to the double Coronation of the Emperor.

Admirable
Bridge.

THE Bridge over the Mote, that surrounds this Palace, is a wonderful Piece of Workmanship. It is a Dragon of an extraordinary Bulk and lively Figure, whose fore and hind Feet standing in the Water, supply the Place of Pillars. His Body, Dolphin-like, forms the middle Arch, while his Tail makes another, and his Head and Neck a third. The Whole is of black Jasper, so well closed and wrought, that it seems to be of one Piece. It is called *Ti-kyang*, or *The flying Bridge*: For the *Chinese* report, that this Dragon flew through the Air from a Kingdom in the *East Indies*, which they call *Tyen-cho*, or *The Kingdom of Bambús*, whence they also say their Law was brought in former Times^a. They tell an hundred idle Stories of this Dragon and this Bridge^b.

In Situation.

THE Editor observes, that *Couplet*, speaking of the Emperor who caused this Palace to be built, places it to the East between the two Inclosures, and upon the South Side. This Prince was called *Ing-fong*, or *King-tong*, and his Brother, *King-ti*: He began his Reign in 1436. He was taken by the *Tartars* in 1450, and let at Liberty some Time after. His Brother dying in 1457, he reassumed the Government the same Year, and died in 1464.

THE second is called *Hyen-yang-tyen*, or *The Palace of the rising Sun*, a Structure beautiful and magnificent, environed with nine very high Towers of different Workmanship, which signify the first nine Days of the Moon: These are very great Holidays, especially the ninth, and there celebrated^c.

Folly of an
Emperor.

THE third Palace is called *Van-shew tyen*, or *The Palace of ten thousand Lives*. It was built near the Lake by the Emperor *Kya-sing*^d, at the Instance of one of the married *Bonzas*, who promised to preserve him from dying by his Art in Chemistry. Hither this silly Monarch (though otherwise good and just) retired to distil the Water of Immortality; but being greedy after Life, he hastened his Death: For being overcome by the Fire of the Furnace, he fell sick in a Month or six Weeks after; and died within a few Days, after he had reigned five and forty Years. This Palace is less than the rest; but what it wants in Bigness, it has in Beauty. It is environed by an high Wall with Battlements, and perfectly round. All the Halls and Cham-

bers also are round, Hexagons or Octagons; and the Architecture is most beautiful and magnificent. 1. Province, Pe-che-li.

THE fourth is called *Sing-hyu-tyen*, or *The Palace of perfect Purity*; and was built by the ancient Emperors for solemnizing the Feast of the fifteenth of the eighth Moon. This Palace is not very big, but wonderfully delightful; being seated on an artificial Mountain, called *Talb-shan*, or *The Mountain of the Hare*. But if *Europeans* laugh at the *Chinese*, for imagining the Spots in the Body of the Moon to be a Hare; the *Chinese* laugh as much at them for painting the Sun and Moon with human Faces. The Hare in the Moon.

THE fifth Palace is called *Ing-tay-tyen*, or *The Palace of the flourishing Tower*. It stands on the Lake Side among the shady Trees: So that the Emperor makes it his chiefest Residence during the excessive Heat.

THE sixth is called *Van-yew-tyen*, or *The Palace of ten thousand Sports and Delights*. It is seated on the North Bank of the Lake. There the Emperor reposes when he goes a-fishing, or to take his Pleasure by Water. Among his Boats, made either to sail or row, there is one built by the Direction of *John Adam*^e, in Form of a Brigantine. In this the Emperor (who is much delighted with it) always goes a-fishing, or to behold the Sea-Fights, which are many Times represented upon the Lake.

THE seventh is a great Platform, encompassed with a Square of high Walls, in the Middle of which is a beautiful Palace, called *Hu-ching-tyen*, or *The Palace of the Walls of the Tiger*. The royal Hall belonging to it is round, very high and majestic. It has on the Top two Cupolas of Brass gilded, one very large, about eight Foot above the other, which is less, and in the Form of a great Gourd. These joined to the Roof, and covered with Azure varnished Tiles, and embellished with Flowers, grotesque Borderings, and other Ornaments, make a curious Shew. From this Hall, and the Balconies belonging to it, the Emperor diverts himself with the Sight of Tygers, Bears, Leopards, Wolves, Monkeys, Musk-Cats, and several other Kinds of Beasts that are bred in the Inclosure; as well as Birds, Peacocks, Eagles, Swans, Cranes; green, red, and white Parrots: Besides other foreign Kinds remarkable both for their Size and the Variety of their Colours. Among the rest there was one called *Lacqui*, or *The Bird with a Bill of Wax*, by reason the Bill is of the Colour of Wax. It is as big as a Blackbird, and learns whatever is taught her. And Diversions.

^a This is to be understood of the Sect of *Fo*.

^b The same, p. 327.
John Adam Schaal.

^c Called also *Shi-fong*, who began his Reign in 1522, and died in 1567.

^d *Mogalbaens's Relation of China*, p. 314, & seq.

^e Or,

THE

Imp 35094 dt. 21.07.10

The Geog-
phy.

THE eighth is seated at the End of a vast Plat-
form^a, and called *The Mansion of the Fortrefs of
the Middle*. The Emperors used to go to the
royal Hall of this Palace to see three thousand
Eunuchs exercise: But the *Tartars* have laid this
Custom aside^b.

Tribunals.

To these Palaces may be added four and twenty
other beautiful ones, built between the two
Inclosures. These are the Tribunals of the *Man-
darins*, who are the high Stewards of the Em-
peror's Household, and not subject to the other
Tribunals of the Empire. They are the Over-
seers of the Palace, the Servants, the Cellars,
Offices, Treasuries, and the like; punishing and
rewarding the Domestics according to his Ma-
jesty's Order. In the Time of the *Chinese* Mo-
narchs, these Tribunals were governed by Eu-
nuchs, but at present by seventy-two *Tartar*
Lords, bred-up in the Palace. Three of these
belong to every Tribunal, who have under them
a great Number of inferior Officers^c.

Temples.
The first.

BESIDES the Palaces, there are, within the
two Inclosures, a great Number of Temples.
Of these, four are more famous than the rest,
and called Palaces, by reason of their Largeness,
the Multitude of their Apartments, and Beauty
of their Structure. The first is called *Tay-quang-
ming*, or *The Palace of great Light*. It is dedi-
cated to the *Pe-tew*, or those which *Europeans*
call the *North Stars*. As they believe this Con-
stellation is a God, and has Power to grant long
Life, the Emperors, Queens and Princes offer
their Oblations in this Temple; where there is
no Image, but only a Cartridge, or Linen Roll,
surrounded with a sumptuous square Border, with
this Inscription, *To the Spirit and the God Pe-
tew*. This Temple stands within the inner Wall,
the other three between the two Inclosures.

THE second is called *Tay-kau-tyen*, or *The Pa-
lace of the most illustrious and sovereign Emperor*,
dedicated to *Quan-ti-king*, a famous Captain, of
whom they implore long Life, Children, Honour,
Riches, and all other temporal Blessings^d.

Temples of
Fo.

THE third Palace or Temple is called *Makala-
tyen*^e, or *The Palace of the horned Ox-head*; that
being the Idol worshipped there.

THE fourth Palace is called *Lama-tyen*, or
The Palace or Temple of the Lama. It is seated
on the East Side of the Lake upon a Mountain,
made with Hands like a Sugar-Loaf; and envi-
roned with Rocks, full of Holes and Cavities, f
occasioned by the continual Dashing of the Waves

of the Sea; from whence, with great Pains, they
were long since brought, the *Chinese* taking great
Delight to behold such rude Works of Nature.
They are so disposed as to represent the high
Out-juttings and rugged Precipices of Rocks.
At the Top appears a very high, round Tower,
of twelve Stories, the uppermost hung-round
with fifty jingling Bells. The Temple, which is
large and magnificent, is seated in the Middle of
the Descent on the South Side; the Cloisters and
Cells of the *Lamas* extending themselves to the
East and West. The Idol stands upon an Altar
within, all naked, and in a filthy Posture, like
the *Roman Priapus*. Neither is it adored but by
the *Lamas* and the Western *Tartars*: For the
Eastern *Tartars* and the *Chinese* abhor it as an ob-
scene Monster. *Shun-chi*, the Emperor's Father,
erected these two Temples for Reasons of State,
and to please his Mother, Daughter of a petty
King of the Western *Tartars*: But there is great
Probability, that at her Death these Temples will
be shut-up.

Obscene Idol.

ALL the Structures already described are
covered with large thick Tiles, varnished with
Yellow, Green, and Blue; and fastened with
Nails to withstand the Winds, which are very
high at *Pe-king*. In regard that all which one sees
of these Palaces, is varnished over with the Co-
lours before-mentioned, they appear at a Dis-
tance, when the Sun rises, as if covered with
pure Gold, enamelled with Azure and Green;
which yields a most delightful and majestic Pro-
spect. The Ridges, which always run from East
to West, rise about eight Foot^f above the Roof.
The Extremities are terminated with the Bodies
and Heads of Dragons, Tygers, Lions, and
other Beasts, that wind about and extend them-
selves the whole Length of the Ridges: A vast
Variety of Flowers, grotesque Works, and other
Ornaments, issuing from their Mouths, Ears, or
being fastened to their Horns.

Beautiful
Prospect.

THUS we have given an Account, says *Ma-
galhaens*, of the principal Structures of the Pa-
lace, for it would be endless to describe all the
other Palaces and Buildings; as, the Houses of
Pleasure, Libraries, Magazines, Treasuries, Sta-
bles, and such like meaner Edifices^g.

BESIDES the Temples, which stand in the
Palace, the Emperor has seven more, five in the
new City, and two in the old, in each of which
he sacrifices once a Year.

THE first of these is called *Tyen-tang*, or *The*

^a Or, Court.

^b *Mogalhaens*, as before, p. 320, & seq.

^c The same, p. 325, & seq. *Makala*, in the *Lama* Language, (but whether that, or the *Mogol*, be meant, we know not) signifies, *An Ox-head, with the Horns on*; and *Tyen*, in *Chi-
nese*, *A royal Palace*.

^d The Author says the Height of a Lance: So he expresses Distances often by
Bow-Shot, Musket-Shot, and such indeterminate Things.

^e *Mogalhaens*, as before, p. 324, & seqq.

The Geogra-
phy.
Temple of
Heaven.

Temple of Heaven, seated two *Chinese* Furlongs a from the principal Gate of the *Chinese* City^a, a little to the East; and inclosed with a round Wall, three Furlongs in Compass. One Part of this Area is taken up with very beautiful Buildings; the rest with a green and very thick Grove of extraordinary high Trees. It has a Portal of five Doors on the South Side: Three in the Middle always shut, but when the Emperor comes to sacrifice; and one on each Side always open. On the South and North Side, there are seven separate Apartments; six of which are Halls and Portals, as large and magnificent as those of the Palace. The seventh is a vast and high round Hall, which represents Heaven, supported by fourscore and two Columns; the whole painted within-side with Azure and Gold, and covered with Tiles varnished with blue. In this Temple the Emperor sacrifices to Heaven, upon the Day and Moment that the Sun comes to the Winter Solstice, attended by all the great Lords and *Mandarins* of his Court. The Victims, he offers, are, Oxen, Hogs, Goats, and Sheep. Great Preparations are made for this Ceremony; which is performed with great Solemnity, and Signs of Humility: For then the Emperor lays aside his Gold, his precious Stones, and yellow Robes; appearing only habited in a plain Vestment of black or sky-Colour Damask.

Temple of the
Earth,

THE second Temple is called *Ti-tang*, or *The Temple of the Earth*. It stands towards the West of the Gate, at the same Distance as the first; from which it differs in nothing, but only that it is covered with green varnished Tiles. The Emperor, being crowned, before he takes Possession of the Empire, sacrifices in this Temple to the God of the Earth. Afterwards, putting on the Habit of a Ploughman, with two Oxen, whose Horns are gilded, and a Plough, varnished with Vermilion and Streaks of Gold, he sets himself to plough a little Piece of Ground that lies within the Inclosure of the Temple. Meanwhile, the Queen, with her Ladies, in another Apartment, dress him a homely Dinner, which she brings him, and they eat together. The ancient *Chinese*s instituted this Ceremony, to the End their Monarchs might remember, that their Revenues came from the Labour and Sweat of the Peoples Brows; and therefore ought to be employed in necessary Expences, for the Good of the Public; not in Luxury and Parade.

THERE are three other Temples, like the former, answerable to three other Gates of the same City; from whence they are two *Chinese* Furlongs distant. That on the North Side is called *Pe-tyen-tang*, or *The North Temple of*

Heaven. Here the Emperor sacrifices at the Time of the Summer Solstice: And, at the Time of the Vernal Equinox, he sacrifices in the Eastern Temple, called *Je-tang*, or *The Temple of the Sun*: And at the autumnal Equinox, in the Western Temple, which is called *Ywe-tang*, or *The Temple of the Moon*. Before the Performance of these Sacrifices, his Majesty commands a Fast for three Days to be observed in *Pe-king*; during which Time, they are forbidden to eat either Flesh or Fish: Nor are the Tribunals, especially the criminal, to do any Business; which somewhat resembles the *Romish* Fast of Ember Weeks.

THE sixth Temple, standing in the old City, is called *Ti-vang-myan*, or *The Temple of all the past Kings*^b. This is a large and magnificent Palace, with many Apartments, Portals, Courts, and Halls; of which, the last is as fair, large, and well adorned, as those of the King's Palace. There you behold, on rich Thrones, the Statues of all the Emperors of *China*, from *Fo-hi*. This Temple stands in the Middle of one of the fairest Streets which is there, crossed by two triumphal Arches, with three high majestic Gates. All People, of what Quality soever, alight and walk a-Foot when they come to these Arches, till they are past the Front of the Temple. Here the Emperor performs the Ceremonies to his Predecessors once a Year.

THE seventh is called *Ching-whang-myan*, or *The Temple of the Spirit that guards the Walls*, near which it stands, on the West Side. The *Mandarins* only sacrifice in this Temple: However, this Ceremony is reckoned among the royal Sacrifices, because they are performed at the Charge and Appointment of the Emperor. Every City in the Empire has such a Temple seated as this is, and consecrated, as we may say, to its guardian Angel^c.

THUS much for *Pe-king*, and the Emperor's Palaces there. He has others in the Neighbourhood^d. Not far from it stands the *Pleasure-House* of the ancient Monarchs, no less than ten common *French* Leagues in Circumference: But it differs vastly from the royal Palaces in *Europe*; having neither Marble nor Water-Works, nor Stone-Walls about it. It is furnished with four Rivulets of excellent Water, whose Banks are planted with Trees; and is composed with three Buildings, very large and neat: Besides several Fish-Ponds, Pastures for Roebucks, wild Mules, and other fallow Beasts; Sheep-Folds, Kitchen-Gardens, Green-Walks, Orchards, and some Pieces of Ground under Corn. Hither the Emperors formerly retired from Business, to relieve

^a It is marked in the Plan of *Pe-king*, and *Du Halde* has given Draughts of this and the next.

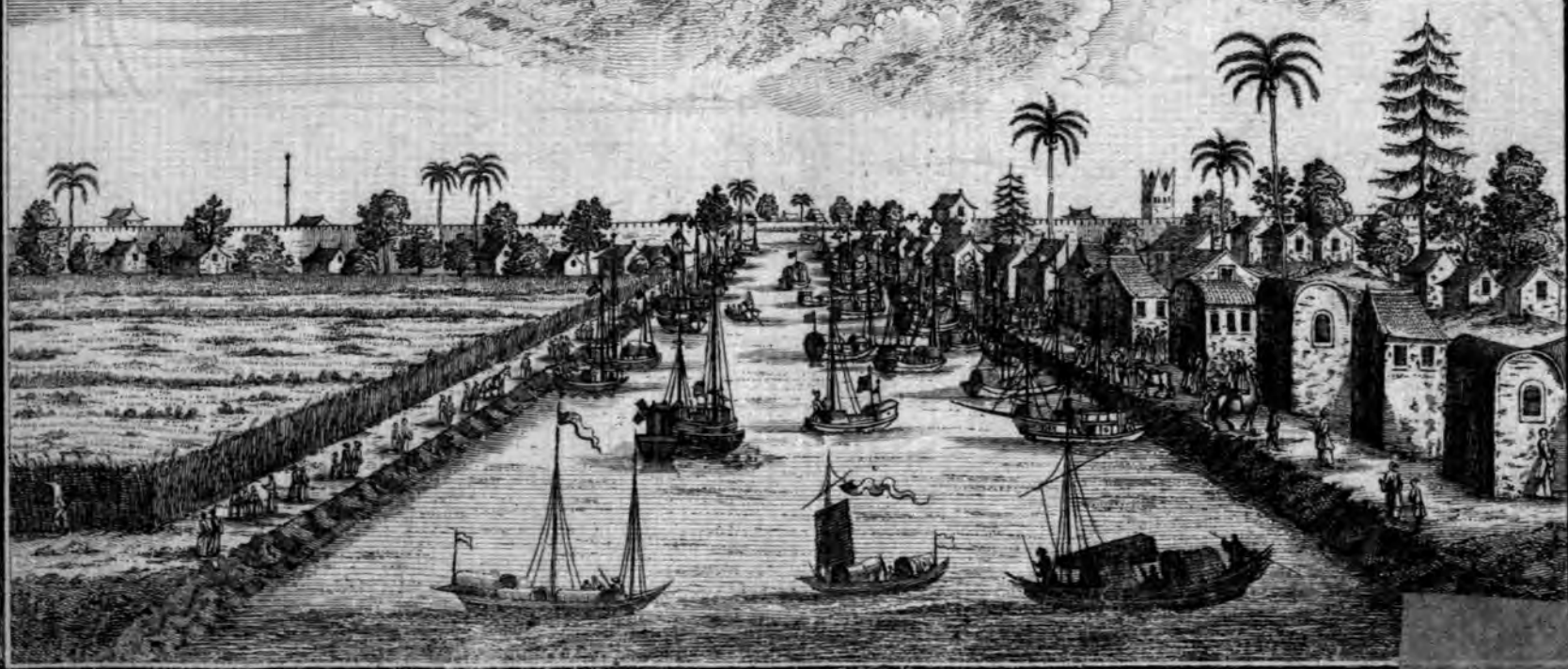
Vol. III. p. 560. *Du Halde* has given the Plan of it.

^d See Vol. III. p. 576. c. and 590. c.

^c *Magalhães's* Relation of *China*, p. 329. & seq.

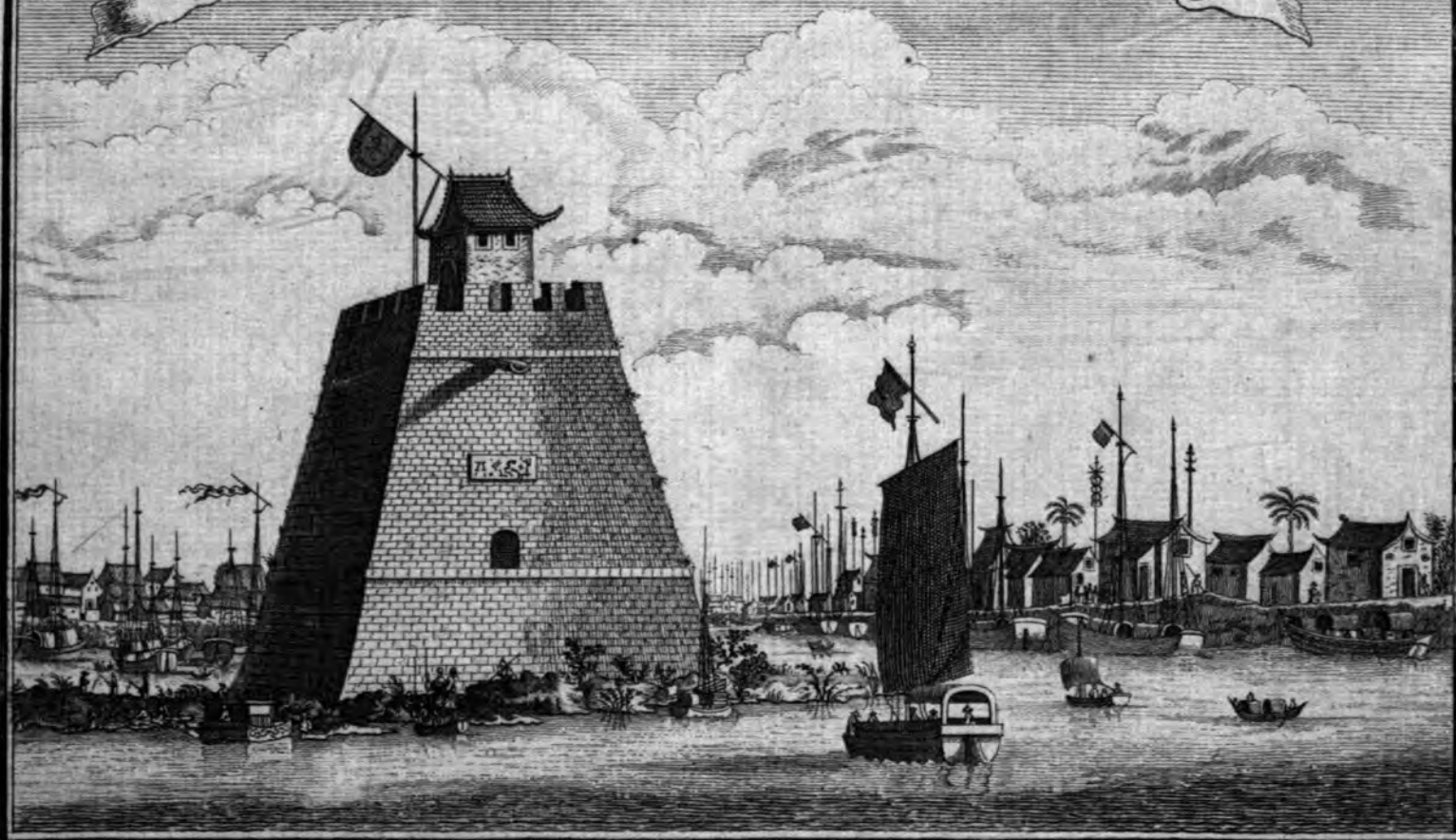
Io-si-wo, between Tyen-tsing-wey & Pe-king, from

Nieu
hof



G. Child, Sculpt.

*The FORTRESS of TYEN-TSING-WEY, on the utmost
Border eastward of the Province of Peking, where 3 Rivers meet*



G. Child Sculp.

Pl. 23. Vol. 4. p. 23.

Chinese Temples -



Vol. 3. p. 428.



Sin-ko-tsyen

J. Wood Sculp.

Vol. 4 Pl. 27. p. 23.

The Geogra- the Cares of Government, and taste the Sweets a ble. It has under it one City of the second Rank, and eighteen of the third. 1. Province Pe che-li.

4. The other Cities of Pe-che-li.

Pau-ting fû. Ho-kyen fû. Ching-ting fû. Shun-te fû. Quang-ping fû. Tay-ming fû. Yang-ping fû. Shan-hay Fort. Swen-wha fû. Yellow Rats. Gates in the great Wall. Tyen-ting-chew and Tong-chew. Table of Situations. Its Authority.

Pau-ting fû. 2. PAU-TING FU, the second City of Pe-che-li, is the Residence of the Vice-Roy of this Province; and lies in the Road to Shan-si, which is exceeding agreeable b. It has three Cities of the second Rank, and seventeen of the third, within its District; which is very pleasant and fruitful. In the midst of the City there is a little Lake, abounding with a Kind of Water-Lily, called, by the Chinese, Lyen-wha.

Ho-kyen fû. 3. HO-KYEN FU has its Name from its being situated between two Rivers. Its Walls are built in a Line, high and handsome, almost four Miles in Compass. On it depends two Cities of the second Order, and fifteen of the third. The Rivers of its District are stored with delicious Cray-Fish, besides other Kinds.

Ching-ting fû. 4. CHING-TING FU is an oblong Square, almost four Miles in Compass. The Walls are handsome, and flanked with square Towers. It stands pretty near a fine River; which, a few Leagues from thence, falls into the Lake Pay-hû.

Its Jurisdiction is very large; comprehending five Cities of the second, and twenty-seven of the third Rank. To the North of it are Mountains, where abundance of uncommon medicinal Herbs are found. Among other Temples, built in Honour of their Heroes, is one consecrated to the Memory of the first Emperor of the Han Race.

Shan-te fû. 5. THE District of Shan-te fû contains only nine of the third Rank; but they are very famous and populous. The Country is well watered with Rivers, full of Fish. The best Touch-Stones are found here. Likewise a very fine Sand, used in polishing of precious Stones: They also make China Ware of it; but not very beautiful.

Quang-ping fû. 6. QUANG-PING FU is situated in the Southern Part of Pe-che-li; and has only nine Cities of the third Rank in its Dependence: But its Territory being watered by several Fish-Rivers, is agreeable and fertile.

Tay-ming. 7. TAY-MING FU, like the former, which lies near it, has nothing extraordinary to boast of; but the Country is more fruitful and agreea-

ble. It has under it one City of the second Rank, and eighteen of the third.

8. YONG-PING FU has in its Jurisdiction only one City of the second, and five of the third Order. It is encompassed by the Sea, by Rivers, and by Mountains, covered with very fair Trees. Its Soil is not very fertile; but it is supplied, by the neighbouring Bay, with all Sorts of Necessaries.

Not far from this City is the Fort Shan-hay, the Key of the Province of Lyau-tong. It stands near the great Wall; which, beginning at the Bulwark built in the Sea, extends, for a League, in a plain Country; and then ascends the Hills.

9. THE Largeness of Swen-wha fû, Number of its Inhabitants, Beauty of its Streets, and triumphal Arches, render it considerable. It is seated amidst Mountains, and not far from the great Wall; having under it two Cities of the second, and eight of the third Rank; besides some Forts along the Wall, provided with numerous Garisons. Its Mountains afford fine Crystal, Marble, and Porphyry. Here is found abundance of yellow Rats, larger than those of Europe; whose Skins are in great Request with the Chinese. The Gates of the great Wall are defended, on the Inside, by several pretty large Forts, viz. Hi-fong-kew, Ku-pe-kew, Tu-fbe-kew, and Chang-kye-kew. Through the first, the Emperor usually goes to hunt in Tartary; and through the two latter, the Tartars, in Subjection to the Empire, come to Pe-king.

Among the lesser Cities, there is one, which, though without any Jurisdiction over others, has, beyond Comparison, a greater Trade, is more populous and rich, than most of the Cities before described; this is Tyen-ting-chew, raised since the Year 1710, to the Rank of Chew, or Cities of the second Order. It is seated where the royal Canal joins the River of Pe-king. Here resides the Superintendent of the Salt made along the Coasts of Pe-che-li and Shang-tong. All ships, that fetch Timber from Eastern Tartary, after crossing the Gulf of Lyau-tong, unload in this Port d, which is but twenty Leagues from Pe-king e; taking Water at Tong-chew, twelve Miles distant; a City often mentioned before f.

SITUATIONS OF PLACES in this PROVINCE, determined in the Year 1710.

Places.	Latitude.	Longitude.	Table of Situations.
Pe-king - - -	39 55 00	0 00 00	
Yw-tyen-byen - -	39 56 10	1 18 10 E.	
Tong-chew - - -	39 56 30	0 30 30	
Yong-ping-fû - -	39 56 10	2 25 28	

a Du Halde's China, vol. 1. p. 246, & seq. b See Fantancy's Journey, p. 530. c Often mentioned in the Travels to Pe-king. See Vol. III. p. 421, 473. d Which is twenty-seven Miles from the Sea up the River Pay-ho. e Du Halde, as before, p. 71, & f. g. f See Vol. III. p. 422, and 569.

The Geographical.	Places.	Latitude.	Longitude.
	Yang-eul-chwang	38 20 00	1 5 25
	Hyong-hyen	39 1 5	0 18 27
	Tay-ching hyen	38 44 00	0 13 50
	Tsang-chew	38 22 20	0 27 00
	Ho-hyen fû	38 30 00	0 18 00
	King-chew	37 46 15	0 6 30 ^W .
	Ki-chew	37 38 15	0 46 30
	Pey-hyang hyen	36 39 55	1 22 30
	Tay-ming fû	36 21 4	1 6 30
	Tong-ming hyen	35 23 5	1 10 15
	Quang-ping fû	36 45 30	1 34 39
	Shun-te fû	37 7 15	1 49 00
	Tsing-wbey-tew	38 1 00	0 53 30
	Chau-chew	37 48 00	1 33 50
	Ching-ting fû	38 10 55	1 43 00
	Ting-chew	38 32 30	1 19 30
	Pau-ting fû	38 53 00	0 52 31
	Ngan-few hyen	39 2 10	0 42 00
	Tsun-hyen	35 43 50	1 40 30
	Chin-ngan hyen	36 30 00	1 36 30
	Lay-shwi hyen	39 25 10	0 39 8
	Tse-king-quan	39 26 00	1 12 37
	Tong-ching	40 12 30	1 55 16
	Swen-wha fû	40 37 10	1 20 2
	Yen-king chew	40 29 5	0 26 00
	Mi-yun hyen	40 23 30	0 24 16 ^E .
	Tyen-tsin-wey [now Tyen-tsing chew]	39 10 00	0 46 22
	Shâ-ching, or Shâ-ho Mouth of its River in the Sea	40 25 25	0 6 36 ^W .
	Kau-ko-chwang	39 28 48	2 18 58
	Shân-hay-quan	40 2 30	3 22 6
	Ki-lin-kew	40 12 00	2 53 31
	Tsing-shân-in	40 22 50	2 6 19
	Hi-fong-kew	40 19 30	1 28 30
	Lo-wen-yew	40 26 10	1 37 13
	Tang-tswen	40 13 20	1 16 22
	Se-mâ-tay	40 41 30	0 48 22
	Ku-pe-kew	40 42 15	0 39 4
	Mâ-mâ pû	41 4 20	0 21 6 ^W .
	Tû-she-kew	41 19 20	0 39 41
	Kun-tji-pû	41 15 30	0 47 22
	Ching-ming-pu	40 59 45	0 44 12
	Long-men hyen	40 47 40	0 49 40
	Chang-kyâ-kew	40 51 35	1 32 48

Auth. THE Latitudes were determined by astronomical Observations; and the Longitudes geometrically, or by a Chain of Triangles, by the Jesuits, who made the Map of the Province for the Emperor. The like is to be understood of all the other Situations * inserted at the End of their respective Provinces. The Longitude is

* These Tables of Latitude and Longitude are given at the End of *du Halde's* fourth Volume, in French. As such Materials are the Foundation of all Maps, the *English* Editor hath thought fit to insert them in his Copies of the Jesuits Maps, as Vouchers. By these Tables one may trace the Progress of the Missioners through each Province, in making the Map of it. ^b A *Tael*, or *Lyang*, is the Value of an Ounce of Silver, equivalent to seven Livres, ten Sols, or six Shillings and eight Pence *English*.

a reckoned from *Pe-king*, which lies East of *Paris* 2. Province, one hundred and thirteen Degrees fifty-one Minutes and thirty Seconds by the Observation of *Gaubil*; one hundred and fourteen Degrees twenty Minutes, by that of *Koegler*; and one hundred and fourteen Degrees, according to others; which being the middle, as well as the round Number, is by us preferred.

SECT. II.

Kyang-nan, the second Province.

Bounds and Extent. Commodities and Trade.

Character of the People. Nan-king, Size and Figure. Present State. Government. Manufactures. The Yang-tse-kyang. Vast Compass. Huge Bells: Their Number. Su chew fû: Its District. Song-kyang fû. Chang chew fû: Ching-kyang fû. Kin-shan and Qua chew. Whay-ngan fû. Yang chew fû. Number of Inhabitants. Ngan-king fû. Whey chew fû. Ning-que fû. Chi chew fû. Fong-yang fû: Its former Grandeur. Rise of Hong-vû. Stately Temple. The Whay-ho. Lyu chew fû. Island of Tsong-ming: Its Towns, Roads, and Soil.

THIS Province, one of the most fertile, trading, and, consequently, wealthy in *China*, is bounded on the West, by that of *Ho-nan* and *Hu-quang*; on the South, by *Che-kyang* and *Kyang-si*; on the East, by the Gulf of *Nan-king*; and on the North, by *Shan-tong*.

It is of vast Extent, containing fourteen Cities of the first, and ninety-three of the second and third Rank; all the most populous and famous in the Empire, especially for Trade. It is the Resort of all the great Barks; for the Country is full of Lakes, Rivers, and Canals, which have a Communication with the great River *Yang-tse-kyang*, that runs through the Province; where there are but few Mountains, except towards the South.

THE Silks, varnished Works, Ink, Paper, and, in general, every Thing that comes from this Province, is much more esteemed and dear than what is brought from the rest. In the City of *Shang-hay* only, and the Villages belonging to it, they reckon above two hundred thousand Calico Weavers.

THE Sea-Coast abounds with Salt-Pits, and Marble is found in abundance. In short, this Province is so rich, that it yields, annually, about thirty-two Millions of *Tails* ^b, exclusive of the Duties on Goods exported or imported.

THE Inhabitants of *Kyang-nan* are civil, polite, and exceeding ingenious, as they are much addicted to the Sciences. This Province is remarkable for producing a great Number of Doctors; who, by their Merit, attain to the Offices and Dignities of the Empire.

THIS Province is divided into two Governments; *I-tong*, or *The Eastern*; and *I-si*, or *The Western*; each of which is subdivided into seven *Fu*.

1. *The Eastern Part.*

	Chew.	Hyen.
1. <i>Nan-king</i> , Capital of the Province, governs - - - -	0	8
2. <i>Su-chew fu</i> , Capital of the Eastern Part - - - -	1	7
3. <i>Song-kyang fu</i> - - - -	0	4
4. <i>Chang-chew fu</i> - - - -	0	5
5. <i>Chin-kyang fu</i> - - - -	0	3
6. <i>Whay-ngan fu</i> - - - -	2	9
7. <i>Yang-chew fu</i> - - - -	0	6

Nan-king,
Size and Figure.

1. *NAN-KING*, if we may believe the ancient *Chinese*, was once the finest City in the World: They say, that if two Horsemen set-out in the Morning from the same Gate, to gallop round it different Ways, they would not meet till Evening. It is certainly the greatest City in *China*; its Walls being sixty-seven *Li* in Compass, (according to the Measure we took of it, says the Author of this Geography, when we made the Plan) which amount to near five great Leagues and a half, and four hundred and sixty-six Fathom.

It stands but one League from the *Kyang*; from which River Barks come-up to it by Means of Canals, that end at the City.

THE Figure of *Nan-king* is irregular, occasioned by the Hills that are within its Walls, and the Nature of its Soil. It was formerly the imperial City; whence stiled *Nan-king*, or *The Southern Court*; as *Pe-king* signifies the *Northern*: But since the six great Tribunals, which then were in both those Cities, are all translated to *Pe-king*, the Emperor gave it the Name of *Kyang-ning*. Its old Name, though still used in Discourse, is never suffered to be mentioned in the public Instruments.

Project State.

THIS City is much fallen from its ancient Splendour. No Footsteps appear of its magnificent Palace. Its Observatory is neglected, and almost destroyed. All its Temples, Sepulchres of Emperors, and other superb Monuments, were

a demolished by the *Tartars*, who first invaded the Empire. About one Third of it is quite waste; but the rest very well inhabited. There is scarce a greater Trade, and Number of People, anywhere, than what are seen in some Parts: But then the Streets are not so broad as those of *Pe-king* by one-half: However, they are handsome enough, well paved, and adorned with neat Shops handsomely furnished.

Province
Kyang-nan.

HERE resides a *Tsong-tu*; before whom are brought important Matters from the Tribunals, both of *Kyang-nan* and *Kyang-si*. The *Tartars* have also a numerous Garison, and possess one Part of the City, separated from the rest by a single Wall. One sees no public Buildings of Note, except its Gates, which are exceeding beautiful, and some Temples; such is that where stands the famous Porcelain Tower. This City is eminent for cultivating the Sciences: It singly furnishes more Doctors and great *Mandarins* than several Cities together: The Libraries here are more numerous, the Booksellers Shops better furnished, the Printing more beautiful, and the Paper better than any-where in the Empire besides.

THE principal Manufactures of *Nan-king* are the Satins, called *Twan-tse*, both flowered and plain; which are the best and most esteemed at *Pe-king*. The Woollen Cloth, called *Nan-king-shen*, which is pretty good, is to be found in some other Cities; being scarce any Thing else than Felt made without weaving; and artificial Flowers made of the Pith of a Tree called *Tong-tsau*; for which there is a great Trade. The Ink of *Nan-king* comes all from *Whey-chew*, in the same Province. Its District is full of great Villages, almost wholly peopled with those who make or sell these Sticks of Ink, which are of all Sorts of Figures, and often adorned with green, blue, or gilded Flowers.

Manufactures.

THE Breadth and Depth of the *Yang-tse-kyang* rendered *Nan-king* formerly an excellent Port: The famous *Corfair*, who besieged it in the late Troubles, passed easily up to it. But, at present, the *Chinese* Vessels of Carriage do not enter the River; either because the Mouth is choaked-up, or disused, that the Knowledge of it, by Degrees, may be lost. In *April* and *May*, abundance of excellent Fish is caught; some of which are conveyed to the Court, covered with Ice, which keeps them fresh, in Barks appointed solely for that Use.

The Yang-tse-kyang.

LE COMTE observes, that *Nan-king* was

^a It should be six Leagues and more than half, reckoning ten *Li* to a great League, as the Missioners commonly do. ^b Under *Jenghiz Khan*, in 1211. ^c These Remarks are from *Le Comte*. ^d *Le Comte* says, its Breadth here is half a League. ^e This was *Ching-ching-kang*, *Que-sing*, or *Kox-inga*, often before-mentioned. ^f This is taken from *Le Comte*, as is a good deal of the rest. ^g See Vol. III. p. 413. c. ^h *Du Halde's China*, p. 73, & seq.

The Geogra-
phy.
Fast Com-
pass.

formerly inclosed with three Walls; that the a outermost was sixteen long Leagues in Compass; and that some Works of it are still to be seen, looking more like the Bounds of a Province than a City. The Things remarkable there, according to him, are the *Kyang*, the Porcelain Tower, the Observatory, and the Bells. Of the two first something has been already spoken ^a, and more will be said hereafter. Of the two latter, he says little more than what *Gemelli* has done ^b; only with regard to the Observatory, he adds, that it was a Platform, with proper Instruments, which were afterwards removed to *Pe-king*: But that now, only some old Buildings remain, and the large square Hall, built in Honour of *Kang-bi*.

Huge Bells.

As to the Bells, he gives the same Dimensions to one lying between the Observatory and the Jesuits College, that the same Author gives it; but makes it swell, towards the Middle, equal to the Circumference of the Bottom, instead of growing smaller. He adds, that the Handle, or Ear, by which it hangs, is two Feet thick, and the lower Brim six Inches and an half, but that it grows thinner and thinner to the Bowing, where the Cone begins; so that under the Ear it is not above two Inches thick: This, he says, may be measured exactly enough, because they pierce their Bells at the Top to increase their Sound, as they fancy. The Metal is brittle, and very ill cast, being full of little Knobs. He computes it to weigh about fifty thousand Pounds.

Their Names.

THESE Bells were cast during the ninth Reign before this; and have their particular Name; the one being called *Chwi*, the *Hanger*; another, *She*, the *Eater*; a third, *Shwi*, or *So*, the *Sleeper*; and a fourth, *Si*, the *Flyer*. This last is on the other Side of the *Kyang* ^c.

Sa chew fu.

2. *SU CHEW FU* is one of the most beautiful and pleasant Cities in all *China*; the *Europeans* compare it to *Venice*. One may pass through the Streets, and to the Sea, by Water, in two Days; the Branches of the River and Canals bearing the largest Barks: From thence, in two or three more, the little Merchant Ships cross over to *Japan*; with which it carries on a Trade, as well as with all the Provinces of the Empire. The Embroideries and Brocades made here, are in great Request, being good and cheap. It is the Seat of the Vice-Roy of the Eastern Part of the Province. Its District is charming, very rich, cultivated, full of People, Towns, and Boroughs, which are ever in Sight. It abounds in Rivers, Canals, and Lakes, covered with splendid Barks; some full of Quality, who are

lodged more decently than in their own Houses. ^{2. Province, Kyang-nan.} There is, in the *Chinese* Books, an ancient Proverb, *Shang yew tyen tang*, *Hyq yew Sû Hang*, that is, *Above is Paradise, below Sû chew and Hang-chew*; in Effect, these two Cities are the terrestrial Paradise of *China*. The Walls are reputed more than four Leagues in Compass; having six Gates toward the Land, and as many to the Water. The Suburbs extend a great Way on both Sides of the Canals; and the Barks are so many floating Houses, ranged in several Rows on the Water, for more than a League together; many of them equal to third Rate Ships in Bulk. The Throngs of Traders are incredible; yet no Quarrelling. The whole together yields a Prospect which cannot well be described. The eight Cities under its Jurisdiction are all very handsome, and a League and an half or two Leagues in Compass ^d.

3. *SONG-KYANG FU* is built in the *Song-kyang* Water, very conveniently for Trade, foreign as ^f well as domestic, being not far from the Sea. Here is a great Resort for Cotton, and lovely Calicos of all Sorts; which, when dyed, one would take for the finest Serge.

ITS four Cities of the third Rank may compare with the best for Magnitude, the extraordinary Resort of Merchants from all Parts, and the different Sorts of Commerce carried on there. Such is, for Instance, *Shan-hay hyen*; where d Ships from *Fo-kyen* are continually entering, and others sailing out, to trade with *Japan*.

4. *CHANG CHEW FU* is a famous City, *Chang chew* and of great Trade, situate near the Canal passing from *Sû-chew* to the *Kyang*, and adorned with several triumphal Arches. Most of its five dependant Cities are very fair and well peopled. *Vu-fi hyen*, for Example, is a good League and an half in Compass, exclusive of the Suburbs, which are a Mile and an half in Length. It is surrounded with a great Ditch, in Form of a Canal. The Walls are fair, and twenty-five Feet high.

IN another of its Cities, *China Ware* is made, which, according to the Inhabitants, adds an admirable Smell to the Water used for Tea ^e; whence it is preferred to the best Porcelain of *King-te-ching* ^f.

5. *CHING-KYANG FU*, though scarce *Ching* three Miles in Compass, is very considerable, on *kyang fu* Account of its Situation and Trade; being one of the Keys of the Empire towards the Sea, and furnished with a strong Garison. Its Walls, in several Places, are above thirty Feet in Height, made of Bricks, four or five Inches thick.

^a See Vol. III. p. 539, and 413, 554.

China, p. 76, & seqq.

^b See Vol. III. p. 554.

^c *Du Halde*, as before, p. 74; and *Le Comte*, p. 83.

^e *Le Comte's Memoirs* of

506, and 521.

^f As the Water of *Vu-fi hyen* does an agreeable Flavour to it, not to be found elsewhere.

Du Halde, as before, p. 75. See also Vol. III. p. 522.

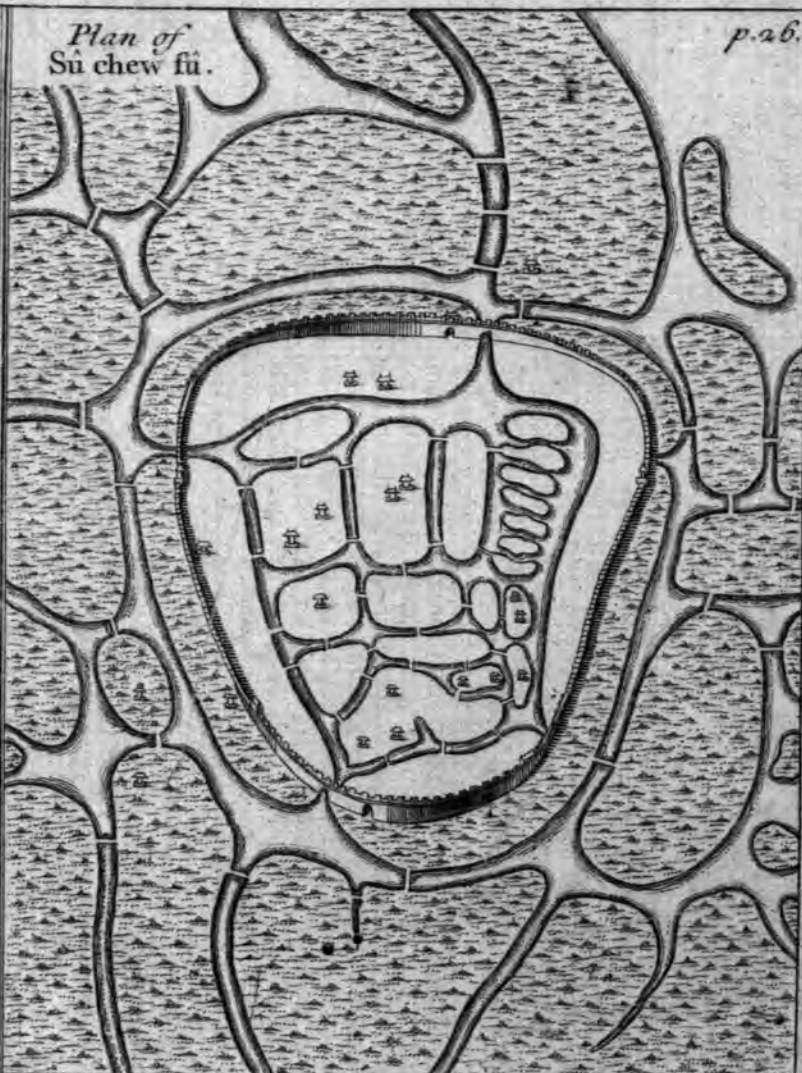
p.25.

Nan King or Kyang
ning fû, Capital of
Kyang nan.



Plan of
Sû chew fû.

p.26.



Temple of Quang gua myau .
from Nieuhoi .



THE Suburbs are a geometrical Mile in a Length, and as populous as the City itself; from which they pass to them over Stone Bridges. The Streets of both are paved with Marble, and crowded with People, especially at its Port. There are some very agreeable Hills near the Town. It stands on the Sides of the *Ta-kyang*^a, which is here a Mile and an half broad; and to the East of a Canal cut as far as the River.

Six Paces from the Bank, in the River, stands a Hill, called *Kin-shan*, or *Golden Hill*, because of its agreeable Situation. On the Top of it is a Tower several Stories high. This Island is, at least, five hundred Paces round; and has its Shores beset with Idol-Temples, and Houses of *Bonzas*.

OPPOSITE, on the other Side of the River, stands *Qua chew*; which, though it passes for no more than a *Ma-tew*, or *Place of Trade*, yet is as considerable as the greatest Cities^b. Near it is the Temple of *Quang-qua-myau*.

6. *WHAY-NGAN FU* is situate in a marshy Place, and inclosed with a triple Wall, is rich, though not very populous. It is in Danger of being drowned, the Ground it stands on being lower than the Canal, which in several Places is supported only by Banks of Earth: But two Leagues off it has a very large and populous Borough, named *Tsing-kyang-pu*, which is, as it were, the Port of the *Whang-ho*. There a *Tsong-ho*, that is, *The Surveyor-General of the Rivers*, or *Grand Master of the Waters*, resides, who has a great Number of Officers under him.

BEYOND the *Whang-ho* there are certain Towns along the Canal, where the *Mohammedans*, settled there for many Generations, have unsuccessfully endeavoured to draw a Trade. Their Temples are very high, and not built in the *Chinese* Taste.

MARBLE is very common in the District of this City. The Plains produce Plenty of Rice and Wheat: Its Rivers and Lakes, all Sorts of very good Fish^c.

7. *YANG-CHEW FU* is built on the royal Canal: Its Air is mild and temperate, the Soil agreeable and fertile. It is a Place of great Trade in all Sorts of *Chinese* Manufactures and Salt, which is made on the Sea-Coast, and conveyed hither by Canals, from whence it is carried into the Heart of the Empire. There is a *Tartar* Garrison in this Place.

To the East is a large Suburb, joined by a Bridge, which with a Ferry-Boat scarce suffices for the People to cross over, although the Passage is not above twenty Paces wide.

^a The same as the *Kyang*, or *Yang-tse-kyang*. of *China*, p. 84. See also Vol. III. p. 460, and 522. 505, and 519. ^d *Du Halde*, as before, p. 76. See also Vol. III. p. 467, and 523. ^e A Mile or more from it on the East Side, according to the Jesuits Map.

YANG CHEW is two Leagues in Circumference, and, including the Suburbs, contains two hundred thousand Souls. The Inhabitants are great Lovers of Pleasure: They educate several young Girls, whom they teach to sing, to play on Instruments, to paint, and all other Accomplishments, and afterwards sell them at a great Price to the rich Lords^d.

2. The Western Part.

				Chev. Hyen.
1. <i>Ngan-king fu</i> , the Capital, governs	-	-	-	o 6
2. <i>Whe-chew fu</i>	-	-	-	o 6
3. <i>Ning-que fu</i>	-	-	-	o 6
4. <i>Chi-chew fu</i>	-	-	-	o 6
5. <i>Tay-ping fu</i>	-	-	-	o 3
6. <i>Fong-yang fu</i>	-	-	-	3 13

1. *NGAN-KING FU*, the chief City of the Western Part of the Province, is charmingly situated near the Borders of three Provinces. Though but five Days Journey from *Nan-king*, yet it has a particular Vice-Roy, who keeps a great Garrison in a Fort that commands the Lake *Po-yang*, at the Entrance of the Province of *Kyang-si*, and of the River *Kyang*.

THIS City is very considerable, on account of its Riches and Trade; whatever is carried to *Nan-king*, passing through it. Its District is a very open, agreeable, and fertile Country.

2. *WHEY-CHEW FU*, the most Southern City in the Province, is one of the wealthiest in the Empire. The Air is wholesome and temperate, though encompassed with Mountains. There is no City without some Dealers from *Whey-chew*; nor any Bank, or Exchange, in which they are not principally concerned; yet the People live sparingly. Here the best Sticks of Ink and varnished Works are made.

ITS District is famous for Mines of Gold, Silver, and Copper; produces the best Tea; and the Earth, whereof they make the *China*-Ware, particularly at *King-te-ching*, is found there, near the Borders of *Kyang-si*.

3. *NING-QUE FU* is situate on a fine River, which falls into the *Kyang*. The Ground where it stands is rugged, because surrounded with Hills; but being covered with Woods, they afford an agreeable Prospect, as well as excellent medicinal Herbs. There are in this Place a great many Manufactories for Paper, made of a Kind of Reeds.

4. *CHI-CHEW FU* stands on the Side of the *Kyang*, and though encompassed with Hills,

^b *Du Halde's China*, p. 75; and *le Comte's Memoirs* ^c *Du Halde*, as before. See also Vol. III. p. 416, 417, and 418. ^e A Mile or more from it on the East Side, according to the Jesuits Map.

The Geogra-
phy.

Tay-ping
fu.

Fong-yang
fu.

Former
Grandeur.

Rise of
Hong-vu.

yet its District abounds with all the Necessaries a
of Life.

5. *TAY-PING FU* is inclosed by three Branches of Rivers that fall into the *Kyang*, on which it stands. This Situation makes it a Place of good Trade. The most considerable for Riches of the three Cities in its District, is *Vu-bu hyen*.

6. *FONG-YANG FU* stands on a Mountain, pretty near the *Yellow River*, and incloses several little Hills within its Walls. The District of this City exceeds in Extent the greatest Provinces of *Europe*, being eighty Leagues from East to West, and sixty from North to South: Comprehending eighteen Cities, five of the second Rank, and thirteen of the third; besides a great Number of *Ma-tew*, or *Places of Trade*, settled on the River for the Convenience of Merchants, and levying the Duties of the Empire.

HONG-YU^a, Founder of the preceding Dynasty, having driven the Western *Tartars* out of *China*, which they had possessed for eighty-seven Years, fixed his Court here in 1367, and named it *Fong-yang*, that is, *The Place of the Splendor of the Eagle*. He designed to have made it the most large and famous City in the Empire; but the Unevenness of the Ground, the Want of fresh Water, and most of all the Neighbourhood of his Father's Tomb, caused him to change his Resolution; and by Advice of his principal Officers, he transferred his Seat to *Nan-king*, thirty-two Leagues distant. Upon this a Stop was put at once to all the Works that were then going forward. The imperial Palace which was to have had a triple Inclosure, the Walls that were to have been nine Leagues in Compass, and the Canals which were marked-out, were all abandoned. There were only three Monuments finished, which are still remaining, and shew the Plan was very magnificent.

THE first is the Tomb of *Hong-vu*'s Father, adorned with every thing the most beautiful in its Kind. It is called *Whang-lin*, or *The royal Tomb*.

THE second is an oblong, square Tower, in the Midst of the City, an hundred Feet in Height, divided into four large Stories, raised on a massive Pile of Brick-work, forty Foot high, an hundred long, and sixty broad. It is said to be the highest Structure in *China*, and is seen at a great Distance^b.

THE third is a sumptuous Temple, erected to the incarnate God *Fo*. It was at first a little Temple, where *Hong-vu*, after having lost his Parents, retired at the Age of seventeen, and served for some Years as Scullion in the Kitchen;

till being weary of such a slothful Life, he lifted himself a Soldier under one of the Chiefs of the Robbers, who had revolted against the *Tartars*. His Valour first gained him the Chief's Daughter in Marriage, and at his Death the Command of the Troops. With this Success, aspiring to the Throne, he attacked the *Tartars* briskly, defeated them, and took *Nan-king*, with several other Cities; never ceasing to pursue them till he had driven them intirely out of *China*.

As soon as he came to the Throne, more out of Acknowledgment to those who had entertained him in his Misery, than any Regard for their Religion, he caused this sumptuous Temple to be reared; assigning Revenues for maintaining three hundred *Bonzas* under a Chief of their Sect, whom he constituted a *Mandarin*, to govern them independent of the Officers of the City.

THIS Temple was called *Long-bing-se*, or *The Temple which the Dragon came-out of*, because the Emperor bears a Dragon and six Griffins for his Arms. It began by a Row of five great Piles of Buildings, after the imperial Manner, flanked with Halls and Lodgings for the *Bonzas*, which is all that remains of it at present; the rest having been destroyed during the last civil Wars, and the Priests (of whom not above one in twenty exist) almost reduced to Beggary. *Fong-yang* itself has been so intirely ruined by these Wars, that from an imperial City it is dwindled to a large Village. It is pretty populous, and well-built towards the Middle; but in all other Parts nothing is to be met-with but low thatched Houses, or open Fields, where they plant Tobacco, in which almost the whole Trade of the Country consists.

IN the neighbouring Mountains there is found The Whay-Abundance of Talk and red Wormwood. Its Plains are watered by fine Rivers, and among others, the great *Whay-ho*; which rising in *Honan*, runs through the whole Province, and after a long Course, passing through the Lake *Hong-tse*, falls into the *Whang-ho*, about thirty-nine Leagues from its Mouth.

7. *LYU-CHEW FU* stands in a pleasant Country, producing all Sorts of Grain and Fruit, the Lake *Tsau* watering the Plains, as well as furnishing all Sorts of Fish. The District is also famous for good Paper, and the best Sort of Tea. Its Mountains, especially near *Lü-kyang-hyen*, are covered with very fine Trees, and there is a very remarkable Bridge near *Lü-ngan-chew*.

To this Province belongs the Island of *Tsong-ming*; or, as it is commonly called, *Kyang-she*, that is, *The Tongue of the River*: Either because

^a That is, *A Prince of Valour that triumphs over every Thing.*
seq.

^b Du Halde's *China*, p. 76, &c

Geogra-
phy.

it is shaped like a Tongue, or that it lies at the Mouth of the *Kyang*^a, about five or six Leagues from the Coast. Anciently it was a sandy Desert, where Robbers and Villains were banished. These having tilled the Ground for a Subsistence, People from the Continent went and settled there, dividing among them the arable Land, which is on the South Side, and yields two Harvests; one of Grain in general, the other of Rice and Cotton. The Land to the North is over-run with Reeds, which serve for Building as well as Fuel, there being no Trees here, except those planted about the Houses. This North Part is interspersed also with large Spots of Land, yielding great Quantities of Salt for Exportation. It is hard to account for these Spots, and more for the strange Alteration that often happens; the saline Lands becoming fertile, and the fertile Lands in their Turn full of Salt.

Is. Towns.

THIS Isle is about twenty Leagues long, and five or six broad. There is only one City on it, which is of the third Rank, inclosed with very high Walls, supported by good Terrasses, and surrounded with Ditches full of Water. The Champain is cut into an infinite Number of Canals, edged with very high Causeways to prevent Inundations, for the Land is even, and void of Hills. The Air is wholesome and temperate.

THE Country also is pleasant. Every now and then one meets with large Boroughs, well furnished with Shops. Between them, scattered up and down, are the Houses of the Families employed in Husbandry. Those of the richer Sort are built with Brick, and covered with Tiles: The Walls of all the rest are made of Reeds platted, and the Roofs of Stubble. These Houses are surrounded with Ditches, full of running Water, and planted on both Sides with Trees. The Inhabitants being very sparing of their Land, the great Roads are narrow, but lined on both Sides with little Houses of Shop-keepers, who sell Refreshments to Travellers: So that the whole Island, in the best cultivated Places, seems to be one immense Village.

Roads and
Soil.

THE Country affords no Game, but there is Plenty of large Geese, wild and tame Ducks, Hens, Hogs, and Buffalos, which they reserve

for the Plough. Fruit is scarce, the Ground producing nothing but large Lemons, small Oranges, Apricots, huge Peaches, the Fruit called *Se-tse*, and large Water-Melons; with all Sorts of Herbs and Pulse the whole Year round^b.

2. Province,
Kyang-nan.

SITUATIONS in *Kyang-nan*, determined in 1711.

Places.	Latitudes obs.	Longitude.	
<i>Po chew</i> - -	33 57 50	0 34 43	W. Table of Situations.
<i>Mong-ching hyen</i> - -	33 22 50	0 9 0	E.
<i>Syau hyen</i> - -	34 12 0	0 44 51	
<i>Tung-shan hyen</i> - -	34 28 30	0 12 25	
<i>Syu chew, or Pe-syu chew</i> - -	34 15 8	0 57 0	
<i>Kyew-pi chew</i> - -	34 8 55	1 38 34	
<i>Sü-tsyen hyen</i> - -	34 0 50	2 2 51	
<i>Hay chew</i> - -	34 32 24	2 55 47	
<i>Whay-ngan fû</i> - -	33 32 24	2 45 42	
<i>Xen-ching hyen</i> - -	33 21 55	3 32 51	
<i>Tong chew</i> - -	32 3 40	4 12 40	
<i>Ju-kau hyen</i> - -	32 26 33	3 57 45	
<i>Tay chew</i> - -	32 30 22	3 21 25	
<i>Tang-chew fû</i> - -	32 26 32	2 55 43	
<i>Pü-kew</i> - -	32 8 0	2 12 50	
<i>Lay-ngan hyen</i> - -	32 25 10	1 57 9	
<i>Ling-pi hyen</i> - -	33 33 26	1 4 17	
<i>Ting-ywen hyen</i> - -	32 32 46	1 4 17	
<i>Lyu-chew fû</i> - -	31 56 57	0 46 50	
<i>Yö-shan hyen</i> - -	31 30 6	0 7 8	W.
<i>Lyu-kyang hyen</i> - -	31 16 49	0 48 40	E.
<i>Twan-yau-chin</i> - -	29 57 40	0 16 0	W.
<i>Ngan-king fû</i> - -	30 37 10	0 35 47	E.
<i>Chi-chew fû</i> - -	30 45 41	0 58 34	
<i>Tsing-te hyen</i> - -	30 24 37	2 5 43	
<i>Whay-chew fû</i> - -	29 58 30	2 3 20	
<i>Ning-qué fû</i> - -	31 2 56	2 15 33	
<i>Li-shwi hyen</i> - -	31 42 50	2 38 0	
<i>Kyang-ning fû</i> ^d , or <i>Nan-king</i> - -	32 4 30	2 18 34	
<i>Tyen-wang-se</i> - -	31 44 43	2 43 40	
<i>Sü-chew fû</i> ^e - -	31 23 25	4 0 25	
<i>Chan-chew fû</i> ^f - -	31 50 36	3 24 17	
<i>Song-kyang fû</i> - -	31 0 0	4 28 34	
<i>Ching-kyang fû</i> - -	32 14 26	2 55 43	
<i>Tsong-ming hyen</i> ^g - -	31 36 0	4 50 0	
<i>Tay-ping fû</i> - -	31 38 38	2 4 15	

^a On the South Side. ^b Du Halde's *China*, p. 78, & seqq. ^c Latitude observed by Noel, thirty-three Degrees thirty-two Minutes twenty Seconds: Longitude, two Degrees thirty-three Minutes forty-five Seconds. See his *Obs. Math. & Phys. in China*, p. 33, & seqq. ^d Latitude, by Noel, thirty-two Degrees four Minutes fifty Seconds. See his *Obs. Math.* as before. Latitude, by Fontaney, thirty-two Degrees four Minutes: Longitude, two Degrees thirty Minutes. ^e Latitude, by another Jesuit, thirty-one Degrees seventeen Minutes fifty Seconds: Longitude, five Degrees forty six Minutes fifteen Seconds. See *Hist. Acad. Paris*, vol. 3. p. 103. ^f Latitude, by Noel, thirty-one Degrees thirty-eight Minutes fifty-six Seconds. See as before. ^g Latitude, by Noel, thirty-one Degrees fifty-two Minutes: Longitude, four Degrees fifty-seven Minutes thirty Second. See as before, p. 23, and 33.

The Geogra-
phy.

Places.

Latitudes obl.

Longitude. a

Chew.

Hyen.

3. Province,
Kyang-fu.

Fong-yang fû - - 32 55 30 1 1 26
Shang-hay hyen, in the Map^a 31 9 0 4 44 0

9. Kin-gan fû - - - 0 9
10. Shwi-chew fû - - - 0 3
11. Ywen-chew fû - - - 0 4
12. Kan-chew fû - - - 0 12
13. Nan-ngan fû - - - 0 4

S E C T. III.

Kyang-fi, the third Province.

Bounds. Inhabitants. Produce. Division. Nan-chang fû. Zhau-chew fû. King-te-ching, *vastly populous: Its Situation: The best China-Ware.* Quang-sin fû. Nan-kang fû. Kyew-kyang fû. Kyen-chang fû. Vũ-chew fû. Lin-kyang fû. Ki-ngan fû. Shwi-chew fû. Ywen-chew fû. Kan-chew fû. *Dangerous Passage.* Nan-ngan fû. *Mountain Mey-lin. Table of Situations.*

Bounds and
Soil.

THIS Province (divided in two Parts by the Kan-kyang) is bounded on the North by that of Kyang-nan, on the West by Hù-quang, on the South by Quang-tong, and on the East by those of Fo-kyen and Che-kyang. Having passed the almost inaccessible Mountains, which are in the Southern Part of it, and unite with these of the two last Provinces, one discovers exceeding fertile Valleys and Plains; yet it is so populous, that it does not yield much more Rice than is sufficient for the Inhabitants, who are reckoned fordid by their Neighbours, but are of an excellent Genius, and often rise to Honours.

Produce.

THE Brooks, Lakes and Rivers of Kyang-fi abound with Fish, particularly Salmon, Trouts, and Sturgeon. The *Lyen-wba* Flower, so much valued in China, is found almost every-where. The Mountains which encompass it are covered with Woods, Simples and medicinal Herbs, as well as very rich in Minerals and Mines of Gold, Silver, Lead, Iron, and Tin. It furnishes very beautiful Silks, excellent Rice^b and Rice-Wine: But what renders it most famous, is, that lovely China-Ware made at King-te-ching.

Kyang-fi is subdivided into thirteen Fû.

Division.

	Chew.	Hyen.
1. Nan-chang fû commands	- 1	7
2. Zhau-chew fû	- 0	7
3. Quang-sin fû	- 0	7
4. Nan-kang fû	- 0	4
5. Kyew-kyang fû	- 0	5
6. Kyen-chang fû	- 0	5
7. Fû, or Vũ-chew fû	- 0	6
8. Ling-kyang fû	- 0	4

1. *NAN-CHANG FU*, though reduced to Ashes by the Tartars, is now one of the finest Cities in China. The Canals and Rivers, by which it may be entered on every Side, render it a Place of great Trade in China-Ware. It stands on the Kan-kyang, which is pretty deep along its Port; and is not far-off the Lake Po-yang, into which that River discharges itself. Its District is so well cultivated, that it is hard to find Grazing for Cattle. It has always produced a great Number of *Literati*, and is full of Persons of Distinction. The Vice-Roy keeps his Court in this City, and under the preceding Dynasty several Families of Princes of the imperial House dwelt there, but at present they all remain at Court.

2. *ZHAU-CHEW FU* is beautifully situated, being built on the North Side of the Lake Po-yang, and encompassed with Rivers that fall into the same, and render its District (which is flat) extraordinary fruitful. It is chiefly famous for the beautiful China-Ware made at King-te-ching. This Borough wants nothing but Walls to merit the Name of a City; those Places called *Ching*, which are of great Resort and Trade, not being inclosed. It extends a League and an half along a fine River: The Streets are very long, and intersect each other at certain Distances; but are rather too narrow, and the Houses too close: However, those of the Merchants take-up a great deal of Room, and contain a prodigious Multitude of Workmen. It is crowded like a Fair, having more than a Million of Inhabitants.

WHATEVER is consumed here, is brought from other Places; even the Wood for supplying the Furnaces with Fuel comes near three hundred Miles. This makes Provisions dear, yet an infinite Number of poor Families flock hither from the neighbouring Towns. There are none, even to the Lame and Blind, but what get their Living here by grinding Colours. Anciently they reckoned no more than three hundred Porcelain Furnaces at this Place, but at present about five hundred.

KING-TE-CHING stands in a Plain surrounded with high Mountains. That on the East

^a Latitude, by Noel, thirty-one Degrees fourteen Minutes twenty-four Seconds: Longitude, five Degrees eleven Minutes forty-four Seconds. See as before. Latitude, by another Jesuit, thirty-one Degrees sixteen Minutes: Longitude, five Degrees eleven Minutes forty-five Seconds. ^b It is much esteemed, and great Quantities sent to Court.

Side,

The Geogra-
phy.

Side, against which it is built, forms, without, a Kind of Semicircle: Those on the Sides give Passage to two Rivers; one of them is small, the other very large. These unite and make an handsome Port, within a League of the Place, in a vast Basin; where, on entering, one sees sometimes two or three Rows of Barks following each other the whole Length of this Space. The Clouds of Flame and Smoke, which ascend from different Parts of it, shew at once the Length, Breadth and Circumference of *King-te-ching*. At Night one would think he saw a large City all on Fire, or a vast Furnace with a great many Vent-holes.

The best
China Ware.

STRANGERS are not suffered to be at *King-te-ching*: Whoever has not Acquaintance in the Place to answer for his Behaviour, must lodge at Night in his Bark. The *China*-Ware made in this Place is the Commodity wherein all the Trade of *Zhou-chew fu* consists; which draws a great Number of Dealers from the other Provinces: For the Sort that is made at *Kanton*, in the Province of *Fo-kyen*, and some other Places, is not so much esteemed in *China*, as Earthen-Ware is in *Europe*. Strangers cannot mistake it, for it is as white as Snow, does not shine, and is without any Mixture of Colours.

THE Water at *King-te-ching* seems to contribute to the Beauty and Value of its Porcelain: For they cannot make so good elsewhere, although they employ the same Materials; which are found on the Borders of this Province, and, in one Place, on those of *Kyang-nan*. What this Earth is, and how it must be ordered, will be shewn hereafter.

Quang-sin
fu.

3. *QUANG-SIN FU* is situated in the midst of Mountains; many of which, though very high, and of great Extent, are divided into fertile ploughed Lands, and abound with Boroughs and Villages: Some of these Hills are covered with Forests, others produce fair Crystal. They were formerly infested with Robbers; and the Roads through them, from *Fo-kyen* and *Che-kyang*, are so narrow, like Straits, that it is very easy to defend the Passages, and prevent Invasions. Very good Paper is made at *Quang-sin fu*, and the best Candles in all the Empire.

Nan-kang
fu.

4. *NAN-KANG FU* stands on the Side of the Lake *Po-yang*, which is about four Leagues long, and thirty broad. It affords excellent Fish; and divides this Part of the Province in two. The Plains produce Plenty of Rice, Wheat, Fruits, and Pulse. The Mountains are partly cultivated, and partly covered with thick Woods; some five Leagues in Length. A Kind of Hemp grows about the Town, whereof they make good Summer Cloaths.

5. *KYEW-KYANG FU* is a large City of Trade, situate on the South Side of the great *Kyang*, (which washes its Walls) near the Entrance of the Lake *Po-yang*: Hence it becomes the Rendezvous of all the Barks; not only of this Province, in their Passage to and fro, but also of *Kyang-nan* and *Hu-quang*. Although it lies near an hundred Leagues from the Sea, yet they catch Salmon, Dolphins, and Sturgeon, in the River here, which ebbs and flows at the New and Full Moon; and runs so slowly, that its Course is scarce perceptible.

6. *KYEN-CHANG FU* stands on the Borders of the Province of *Fo-kyen*, in a pleasant and fruitful Country. The Rice-Wine made here is pretty good; but the Rice itself is not. However, the Land produces a Sort of red Rice, that is well tasted, and wholesome. A Kind of Linen is made here of Hemp, which is worn during the Summer Heats.

7. *VU CHEW FU*, or *Fu chew fu*, stands on the Side of a River, in a great fertile Plain. The Compass of its Walls is greater than that of any City in *France*, excepting *Paris*; and its Government may extend twenty or twenty-five Leagues. This must have been one of the most flourishing Cities of the Empire before the last Wars. The East Side is well built again. In the other Part, one sees Clusters of repaired Houses rising out of the Ruins, and forming, as it were, Hamlets, Villages, and Boroughs, in the City itself. They reckon but forty or fifty thousand Inhabitants in the City and Suburbs; but the Country is very populous, and well improved. In several Places they have, annually, two Harvests of Rice; which is so white, that it dazzles the Eyes. Most of that furnished as Tribute, by the Province, is sent from this District. Figs thrive very well; and Vines, planted by a Missioner, produced good Grapes: But other Sorts of Fruit do not ripen kindly; probably, because the Soil is too moist.

8. *LIN-KYANG FU*, situate two Leagues and an half from the *Kan-kyang*, on the *Yu-ho*, is not populous, and has but little Trade. As the Inhabitants live very saving, they say, by Way of Sneer, that one Hog serves the City two Days.

THREE Leagues distant, on the *Kan-kyang*, stands a *Ching*, or Borough, where there is a great Trade for Drugs and Simples; which are brought in Barks from all the Southern Parts. The Soil of this District is good: It produces excellent Oranges; in which almost all its Trade consists: The Mountains, surrounding it, are covered with great Trees, or cultivated by Way of Terraces.

* Du Halde's China, p. 79, & seq.

b About three or four Miles distant.

The Geogra-
phy.
Ki-ngan fū.

9. **KI-NGAN FU** is situate on the *Kan-kyang*; which, near this City, runs, with extreme Impetuosity, among Rocks, even with the Surface of the Water. There are eighteen Currents, which require both Strength and Skill, either to ascend or descend them. This dangerous Passage is called *She-patan*^a, and continues for twenty Leagues: But, afterwards, one finds a fine River, six Times broader than the *Sein* at *Rouen*; and always covered with at least fifty loaded Barks. Though the Country is uneven, the Plains are fertile; and the Mountains are said to have Mines of Gold and Silver.

Shwi-chew
fū.

10. **SHWICHEW FU** stands on a Branch of the *Kan-kyang*; being divided by a River in two Parts, each encompassed by a Wall: One is called the *North*, the other the *South City*. These are joined by two Bridges: One of Stone, with above ten Arches, well built; the other of Boats. The first is also called the *Mandarin City*, because all the *Mandarins* dwell there. The other contains almost all the considerable Families, Citizens, and common People^b. This Place is named *The Happy*, from the Goodness of the Air. In the Brooks, that water its District, Gold and Silver Sands are found, as is the *Lapis Armenus* in the Mountains; with which, and Forests, it is surrounded.

Ywen-
chew fū.

11. **YWENCHW FU** has, in its Neighbourhood, a little Lake, beset with Houses of Pleasure, where the Inhabitants divert themselves. It furnishes the rest of the Empire with a good deal of Vitriol and Alum. Though its District is but small, it yields to none of the rest in Fertility.

Kan-chew
fū.

12. **KAN CHEW FU**, which may be as large as *Rouen*, takes its Name from the River *Kan-kyang*, whereon it stands. It receives another near its Walls, called *Chang-ho*^c. There is a Bridge of Boats fastened together by Iron Chains. One of these Boats is so contrived as to open to let the Barks pass, after they have been examined and searched by the Receivers of the Custom-house, who daily come here for that Purpose.

Its Mountains are said to abound with medicinal Herbs, as well as those of *Quang-sin fū*; at the Foot of which the chief Priest, or *Bonza* of the Sect of *Tau-tse*, (who assumes the Title of *Tyen-se*, or *Heavenly Master*) has his Residence.

FROM this City to *Nan-ngan* there are nothing

but Defarts: But the Country to *Nan-chang*, the Space of sixty Leagues along the River, is charming, populous, and fertile. It is a Day's Journey from the rapid Current spoken of before^d. Here is a *Tau-ye*, or Governor of two first-rate Cities, established to suppress the Robbers who formerly infested this District; which borders on *Hu-quang*, *Fo-kyen*, and *Quang-tong*, and afforded them a Retreat.

THE District of this City is very extensive, and abounds with those Trees from whence the Varnish distils; which is some of the best that *China* affords.

13. **NAN-NGAN FU** is as big as *Orleans*; but the Suburbs are larger than the City. It is very handsome, and populous; of great Trade, and much frequented; being the common Thoroughfare for Mercandizes^e to or from *Quang-tong*, near whose Borders it stands. The Passage is by Water, except ten Leagues by Land, from this Place to *Nan-byong*. At the End of the two Leagues, you come to a Mountain^f so steep, that in some Places they have cut it in Form of Stairs. The Top of it is Rock, to the Depth of forty Feet; through which they have been obliged to open a Passage^g.

SITUATIONS in Kyang-si, determined in 1714.

Places.	Latitude.	Longitude.
<i>Pong-tse hyen</i>	— 30 1 40	0 6 40 E.
<i>Kyew-kyang fū</i>	— 29 54 00	0 24 00 W.
<i>Shwi-chang hyen</i>	— 29 49 12	0 45 40
<i>Nan-kang fū</i> ^h	— 29 31 42	0 26 37
<i>U-ning hyen</i>	— 29 15 56	1 26 37
<i>Ning-chew</i>	— 29 00 45	1 38 20
<i>Sin-chang hyen</i>	— 28 18 00	1 50 27
<i>Shwi-chew fū</i>	— 28 24 40	1 10 54
<i>Nan-chang fū</i> ⁱ	— 28 37 12	0 36 43
<i>Tu-kang hyen</i> ^k	— 28 40 48	0 10 00 E.
<i>Tau-chew fū</i>	— 28 59 20	0 13 38
<i>Tu-chang hyen</i>	— 29 20 24	0 12 18 W.
<i>King-te-ching</i>	— 29 15 56	0 47 43 E.
<i>Te-hing hyen</i> ^l	— 28 54 50	1 13 38
<i>Quang-sin fū</i>	— 28 27 36	1 37 30
<i>Qua-ki hyen</i>	— 28 16 48	0 48 50
<i>Fu-chew fū</i>	— 27 56 24	0 10 30 W.
<i>Kyen-chang fū</i> ^m	— 27 33 36	0 12 18 E.
<i>Nan-fang hyen</i>	— 27 3 36	0 00 40 W.
<i>Ning-tu hyen</i>	— 26 27 36	0 37 45
<i>Shwi-king hyen</i>	— 25 49 12	0 27 16
<i>Whey-chang hyen</i>	— 25 32 24	0 46 1

^a See Vol. III. p. 409.

^b Du Halde's China, p. 81, & seq.

^c But this River does not fall into the

Kan-kyang at the City.

^d Under *Ki-ngan fū*.

^e See Vol. III. p. 407, &c.

^f This is the Moun-

tain *Mey-li*, mentioned in Vol. III. p. 408.

^g Du Halde, as before, p. 83.

^h Latitude, by *Noel*,

twenty nine Degrees twenty-three Minutes.

ⁱ By the same, twenty-eight Degrees thirty-nine Minutes fifty-

two Seconds.

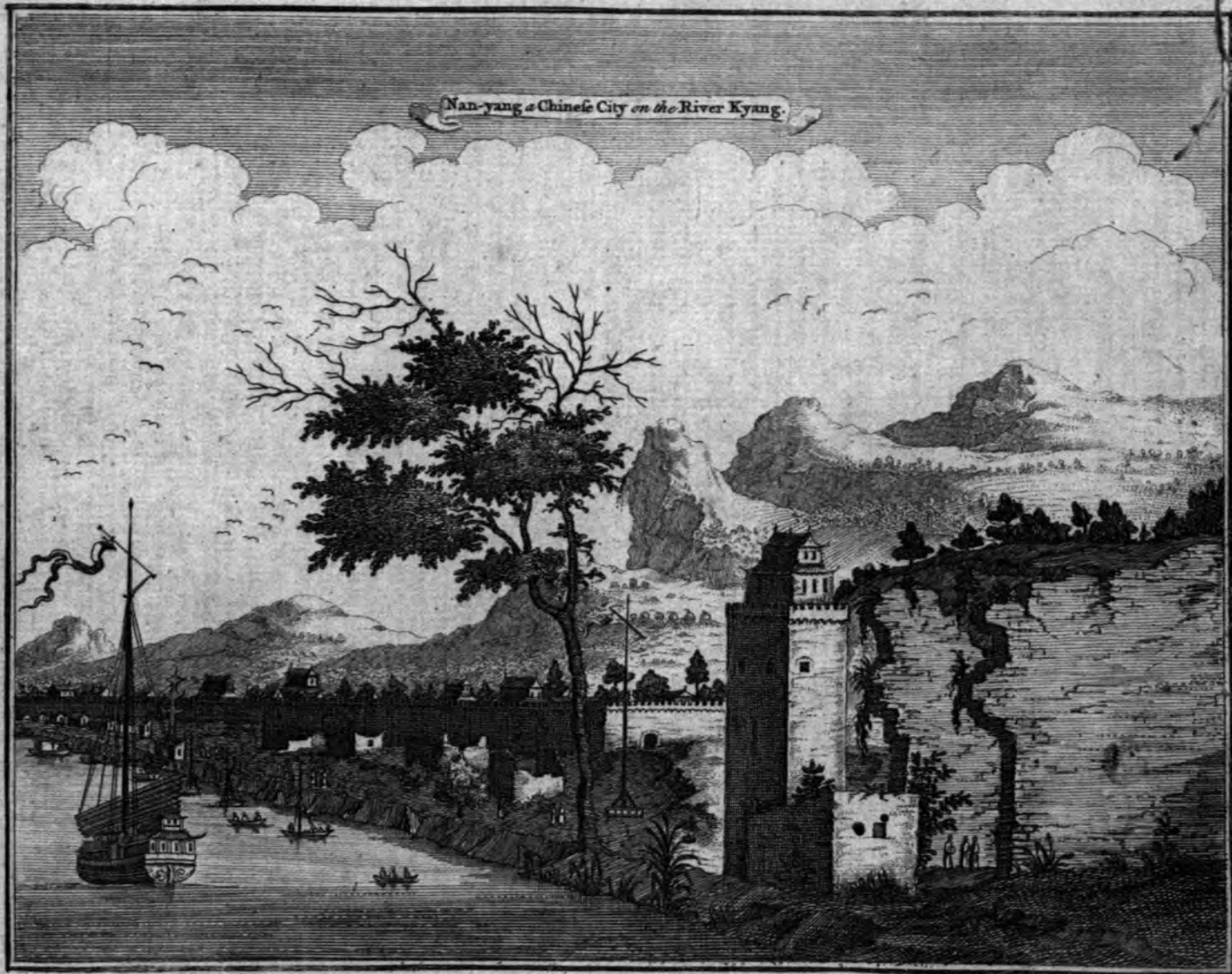
^k In the Jesuit's Map, named *Hai-kan hyen*.

^l In the Map, *Yang-te hyen*.

^m La-

titude, by *Noel*, twenty-seven Degrees twenty-eight Minutes thirty six Seconds.

Nan-yang a Chinese City on the River Kyang.



Fû chew sū, or Hoksyew,
Capital of Fo kyen, from Montanus.



A. Suburbs call'd Samthun. C. Fresh water River.
B. Bridge with 30 Arches. D. The Water Gate.

Places.	Latitude.	Longitude.
Chang-ning hyen	24 52 48	0 51 50
Long-nan hyen	24 51 36	1 51 40
Nan-ngan fû ^a	25 30 00	2 28 38
Kan-chew fû ^b	25 52 48	1 40 54
Wan-ngan hyen	26 26 24	1 47 20
Ki-ngan fû	27 7 54	1 34 5
Ywen-chew fû	27 51 32	2 5 24
Lin-kyang fû	27 57 36	1 1 30

SECT. IV.

Fo-kyen, the fourth Province.

Bounds and Situation. Soil and Commodities. Oranges, and Li-chi. Language. Division. Fu-chew fû. Tswen-chew fû. Remarkable Bridge. Kyen-ning fû. Fû-ning chew. Yen-ping fû. Ting-chew fû. Hing-wha fû. Shau-u fû. Chang-chew fû. Hyamen, or A-mwi Part.

Bounds and Situation.

FO-KYEN is bounded by Che-kyang, on the North; Kyang-si, on the West; Quang-tong, on the South; and on the East, by the Sea of China. This is one of the least, yet richest Provinces of the Empire. The Climate is hot, but pure. The inland Provinces are furnished from hence with dried and salted Fish, caught on the Coast; whose Shores, which are very irregular, occasioned by the many Bays of different Sorts, are defended by a great Number of Forts.

Soil and Commodities.

ITS Mountains are almost all formed into a Sort of Amphitheatres and Terrasses, placed one over another, and sowed with Rice; which, in the Plains, is watered by little Canals cut from the great Rivers, Torrents, and Springs. They have the Art of raising the Water to the Top of the highest Hills, and convey it from one to the other by Pipes of Bambû, with which this Province abounds.

BESIDES Fo-kyen's producing whatever is found in most of the other Provinces, as, Musk, precious Stones, Quicksilver, Hempen Cloth, and Calico, Steel, and all Sorts of Utensils, made to Perfection; it is rendered exceeding rich by Trade with Japan, the Philippine Islands, Formosa, Java, Kamboja, Siam, &c. from whence are brought Cloves, Cinamon, Pepper, Sandal Wood or Sanders, Amber, Coral, and the like. Its Mountains are covered with Trees fit for building Ships, and contain Mines of Tin and Iron: They say also, some of Gold and Silver.

AMONG its Fruits, there are excellent Oranges,

a bigger than the European; having both the Taste and Smell of the Muscadine Grapes: The Peel, which comes-off very easily, is thick, and of a bright yellow, they candy, and transport into other Provinces. Here also are found beautiful red Oranges, and two Sorts of Fruit peculiar to China, viz. the Li-chi, the most delicious, perhaps, in the World; and the Long-ywen, which is very good, but not so much esteemed. These will be described elsewhere. The Plant Tyen-wha, for dying blue, which thrives here, is in far greater Esteem than that which grows in the other Provinces.

THE Mandarin Language generally spoken throughout China, is understood by few in Fo-kyen: For they speak a different Language in most of the Cities; each of which has a Dialect of its own: Passengers find this very inconvenient. The Inhabitants, who are ingenious, and fond of Chinese Sciences, produce a great Number of Literati.

THIS Province is divided into nine Fû, and subdivided into sixty Hyen, or Cities of the third Rate, having none of the second.

	Chew.	Hyen.
1. Fû-chew fû governs	-	9
2. Tswen-chew fû	-	7
3. Kyen-ning fû	-	8
4. Yen-ping fû	-	7
5. Ting-chew fû	-	8 ^c
6. Hing-wha fû	-	2
7. Shau-u fû	-	4
8. Chang-chew fû	-	10
9. Tay-wan fû	-	3 ^d

1. Description of its Cities on the Continent.

1. FU-CHEW FU^e, (where resides the Vice-Roy, and the Tjong-tû, who is the Intendant-General both of this Province, and that of Che-kyang) is famous for the Advantage of its Situation, the Greatness of its Trade, Multitude of its Literati, Fertility of its Soil, Beauty of its Rivers, which carry the largest Barks up to the Walls; and, lastly, for its admirable Bridge, of about an hundred Arches, built with fair white Stone, across the Bay. All its little Hills are full of Cedars, Orange and Lemon Trees.

THEY make an exceeding white Sugar throughout its District. The Fruits Li-chi and Long-ywen, above-mentioned, grow there in abundance. These are dried and carried into all Parts of the

^a Latitude, by Noel, twenty-five Degrees twenty-nine Minutes fourteen Seconds.

^b By the same, thirty

^c Du Halde's China, p. 83, & seq.

^d In the Description, 7 Hyen.

^e This is the same which is commonly called Hokkyow in the Dutch Embassies, inserted in the third Volume. See also p. 502.

The Geogra-
phy.

Tywen-
chew fū.

Empire: But they are not half so pleasant as a one of the finest Cities in the Empire; and is fortified naturally by inaccessible Mountains; from whence the descending Waters are conveyed by Canals into every House: Scarce any City besides can boast the like. As the Mandarin Language is commonly spoken by the Inhabitants, they are, probably, a Colony from the Province of *Kyang-nan*.

2. *TSIEN-CHEW FU* ^a is agreeably situated on a Cape, and almost encompassed with Water; the greatest Barks entering within its Walls. All the Cities of its District are very populous, and carry on a great Trade: Their Houses are neat, their Streets adorned with triumphal Arches, and paved with Bricks, which inclose two Rows of square Stones. Among the Temples here, one deserves Notice, for its two Towers, built with Stone and Marble, seven Stories high, with Galleries round each ^b.

Remarkable
Bridge.

Not far from the City is a Bridge of blackish Stone, remarkable for its Largeness as well as Beauty ^c. It has no Arches, but is sustained by above three hundred Pillars, with acute Angles, to break the Force of the Stream, which before caused the Loss of an infinite Number of Barks. They affirm, that it cost a Governor, who built it, one million four hundred thousand Ducats. A prodigious Number of Ships, bound for foreign Parts, are every Hour setting out from this City and others in its District.

Kyen-ning
fū.

3. *KYEN-NING FU* stands on the *Min-bo*, and has a pretty good Trade. As that River ceases to be navigable about the City *Pu-ching hyen*, thirty Leagues distant, the Goods are landed here, and carried by Porters (eight or ten thousand attending the Barks) beyond the Mountains, which are very steep, as far as a Borough near *Kyang-chān*, in the Province of *Che-kyang*, where they are embarked on another River. This Road, which is made level, and paved with square Stones, is furnished with Boroughs full of Inns, for lodging Travellers. This City, after two long Sieges, was taken by the *Tartars*, who burnt it intirely, and put all the Inhabitants to the Sword. It has been rebuilt since; but not so sumptuously as before.

Fū-ning
chew.

Not far from *Kyen-ning* is *Fu-ning chew* ^a, a City of the second Rank, remarkable for having Jurisdiction over two Cities of the third Order, viz. *Fu-ngan hyen* and *Ning-te hyen*. The Country where they are situated is of vast Extent, but over-run with Mountains; those to the North of difficult Ascent.

Yen-ping
fū.

4. *YEN-PING FU* stands on the Defent of a Hill; at whose Foot runs the *Min-bo*: The Whole appearing from the River like an Amphitheatre. All the Barks of the Province pass by its Walls. Though not very large, it is reckoned

one of the finest Cities in the Empire; and is fortified naturally by inaccessible Mountains; from whence the descending Waters are conveyed by Canals into every House: Scarce any City besides can boast the like. As the Mandarin Language is commonly spoken by the Inhabitants, they are, probably, a Colony from the Province of *Kyang-nan*.

SHA-HYEN is called the *Silver City*, from the Fertility of its Lands: Nor are those belonging to its six other dependent Cities, less fruitful.

5. *TING-CHEW FU* lies among the Mountains which separate *Fo-kyen* from *Kyang-fū*.

^f: Of these, some are covered with Flowers, which make a delightful Prospect: Others, if allowed to be dug, would afford Mines of Gold: Some again are so prodigious high, as to be almost inaccessible: However, the District abounds with Necessaries. But neither is the Air healthful, nor the Trade considerable.

6. *HING-WHA FU*, signifies a growing Flower, being situated on the Coast in the most

delightful as well as fertile Country of the whole Province, paying the largest Tribute in Rice of all the Cities. It is adorned with several triumphal Arches. Though it has no more than two *Hyen* under it, yet its District contains so great a Quantity of Boroughs and Villages, that it seems but one continued City. Some of these Boroughs also might, for Largeness and Beauty, pass for Cities. The Country furnishes Silk; and is full of rich Merchants. The Roads are very handsome, broad, and almost all paved with square Stones. The Fruit, *Li-chi*, is better here than in any other Part of the Province ^e.

7. *SHAU-U FU*, which is one of the Keys of the Province, is become very considerable of late, being encompassed with Forts, or military Places, as large as Cities.

In its District, there are Manufactories of very fine Linen, made of a Kind of Hemp, much esteemed in *China*, because it is cool in Summer; and when one sweats, never sticks to the Back.

8. *CHANG-CHEW FU* ^f is the most Southern City in the Province. It stands on a River that ebbs and flows ^g; and, to the South of its Walls, is crossed over a very fair Bridge of thirty-six very high Arches, with rich Shops on both Sides ^h.

The Inhabitants are very ingenious, and have a great Talent for Business. Its Territory abounds with the large Muscadine Oranges before-men-

^a Or, *Suen-chew fū*. See Vol. III. p. 501.

^b See before, Vol. III. p. 435.

^c This is the Bridge of *Lo-jan*, Vol. III. p. 501.

^d It stands on the Coast, above an hundred and ten Miles from *Kyen-ning fū*, and is the only *Chew* in *Fo-kyen*, though not mentioned in the Table of Division; being, possibly, a *pende* of any *Fū*.

^e Du Halde's *China*, p. 83, & seq.

^f See Vol. III. p. 521.

^g Called the *Swang*, by the *Chinese*; by *Europeans*, the River of *Chin-cheo*, or *Chin-chew*.

^h Like London

tioned,

PROVINCE of FO KYEN



A CHART
of the
BAY of CHIN-CHEW
or
CHANG-CHEW
in
CHINA.
from Montanus



Scale of Leagues.
1 2

2. Geogra-
phy.

tioned^a, which are candied and exported; and the finest Crystal imaginable is found in the Mountains, whereof they make Buttons, Seals, and the like. This City is very populous, and of great Resort^b, being in the Neighbourhood of A-mwi, in the Bay of Chang-chew.

Hya-men or
A-mwi
Port.

HYA-MEN, or *The Port of A-mwi*^c, is so named from the Island to which it belongs: It is, properly, no more than a Road, that makes one of the best Harbours in the World. It is inclosed on one Side by the firm Land, and several very high Islands, which defend it against all Winds. It is capacious enough to receive many thousand Ships; which may ride as near the Shore as they please without Danger. And there are continually in the Port, a great Number of *Chinese* Junks, that trade to foreign Countries. Twenty Years ago, it was much frequented by *European* Ships; but, at present, the Trade is carried to *Kanton*. The Emperor keeps a Garison of six or seven thousand Men here, under the Command of a *Chinese* General.

At entering the Road, there is a Rock, which seems to divide it into two Parts, just as the *Mingant* divides that of *Brest*; and three Leagues from thence, there is a little Isle, having a Hole from one Side to the other, through which one may see the Light; whence it is called the *Pierced Island*^d.

BESIDE A-mwi, there is *Que-mwi*, and several other Islands in the Bay of *Chang-chew*, of which some Account has been already given^e, with many others, great and small, along the Coast.

2. ACCOUNT of the Islands of Pong-hù and Tay-wan, or Formosa.

Introduction. Islands of Pong-hù, Tay-wan, or Formosa. Gold Mines. Chinese Cruelty. Air and Soil. Cattle and Birds. Tay-wan fù: The Streets. The Port. Dutch Fort. Other Chinese Cities. Native Inhabitants. Houses and Furniture. Persons and Diet. Dress and Ornaments. Marriages. Government. Morals and Religion. Discovery of Tay-wan by the Chinese: By the Japanese and Dutch. Fort Zeland built. Chinese settle there. Koxinga's

Design against Formosa. Takes Tay-wan. 4. Province, Fo-kyen.

WE have several Accounts of the Island of *Formosa*^f, particularly those by *George Candidius*, a *Dutch* Minister; *David Wright*, a *Scot*; and *Mr. George Psalmanaazaar*, a Native, now in *England*. These Authors differ vastly. The two first wrote about the Middle of the last Century, and from them *Montanus* hath composed his Description of the Island^g: The last, in 1704, published his Relation in *English*, with Cuts, containing three hundred and thirty-one Pages in Octavo. That of *Candidius* is translated^h and published in one of our voluminous Collections. It consists of no more than six or seven Pages, and relates chiefly to some Nations of the original Inhabitants, at the Time the *Dutch* were in Possession of the City of *Tay-wan*. The following Account comes from the Missioners who made the Map of *Fo-kyen*, and treats of the same Inhabitants, but reduced to a State of Dependence on the *Chinese*, who at present are Masters of the Western Part of the Island: Though *Psalmanaazaar* affirms, the *Japanese* are Masters of the Whole.

To the Province of *Fo-kyen* belongs the Island of *Formosa*, to and from which Ships are continually passing. In the Way lie the Islands of *Pong-hù*ⁱ, which form a little Archipelago. The chief of them is inhabited only by the *Chinese* Garison: However, a literary *Mandarin* resides there to watch the trading Vessels that pass, which brings-in a considerable Revenue.

As these Isles are nothing but Sands or Rocks, all Sorts of Necessaries must be brought thither from *Hya-men*, or *Formosa*, to the very Wood for Firing: For they afford neither Bushes nor Briars, nor any Trees except one, which is their sole Ornament. The Port is good and secure against all Sorts of Winds: Its Ground is sandy, and the Water from twenty to twenty-five Fathom deep.

NOTHING remains of the Fort, built by the *Dutch* Fort^k at the End of the great Isle, to defend the Entrance, except the Name of *Hong-mau-chay*, that is, *The Fort of the red Hairs*, for so the *Chinese* called them. This Harbour, though in such a de-

^a See before, p. 33. a.

^b Martini found, in the Hands of one of the *Literati*, an old Parchment-Book in Gothic Characters, which contained most of the Scripture in *Latin*; but the Owner would not part with it, because it had been long in the Family.

^c In the *French* it is written, *Emoy*, and *Emouy*. The *English* call it *Amoy*, and have a Factory there. Some write, *Eymy*. It is often mentioned in the *Dutch* Embassies, Vol. III. p. 444, & seq.

^d Du Halde's *China*, p. 86; and le Comte's *Memoirs of China*, p. 85.

^e See Vol. III. p. 444, 493, &c.

^f Called also *Tay-wan*: Although this is more properly the *Chinese* Name of a little Island, where the chief City is situate: They call the great Island, *Pe-kan*, or *Pakkand*, which some say is the indigenous Name. See Vol. III. p. 497. But *Psalmanaazaar* says, the Natives call it *Gad-dwia*, or *The beautiful Isle*: Also, *Kaboski*, or *The principal Island*.

^g See *Ogilby's China*, vol. 2. p. 9, & seq.

^h It was first translated into *French*, and published in the fifth Volume of the *Dutch* Collection of Voyages to the East Indies, along with those of *Van Riebeeck*. Vol. III. p. 492. e.

ⁱ Called, by Europeans, *The Piscadores*.

^k See folate.

*The Geogra-
phy.*
Formosa.

solate Place, is absolutely necessary for the Preservation of *Tay-wan*, which at present has no Port for Ships, that draw above eight Feet of Water.

FORMOSA is divided into two Parts, by a Chain of Mountains, which begins in the South of *Sha-ma-ki-tew*, and ends at the North Coast: Only that Part lying to the West of the Mountains belongs to the *Chinese*, contained between twenty-two Degrees eight Minutes and twenty-five Degrees twenty Minutes of North Latitude.

THE Eastern Part, if you will believe the *Chinese*, is mountainous and wild, inhabited by People who differ little from the Savages of *America*; only they are more chaste, and of a mild and peaceable Disposition, yet always in War with the *Chinese*. They love and assist one another, are not covetous or selfish; making no Account of Gold or Silver, whereof they say they have several Mines: But they are exceeding revengeful, without Law or Government, living only on Fish and the Flesh of Animals; and, in short, without any Worship or Religion.

Gold Mines.

THE *Chinese* finding no Gold Mines in the Part whereof they were Masters, and not venturing to cross the Mountains, sent a small Ship to the Eastern Part, where they were assured they lay. The Inhabitants received them very hospitably, but gave them no Information concerning the Mines: Possibly, through Jealousy of their Power. After eight Days Search, all the Gold the *Chinese* found were a few Ingots, lying carelessly in the Cottages. After these good People had assisted them to equip their Vessel, they invited their Benefactors to a great Entertainment; and having made them all drunk, cut their Throats when they were asleep, and sailed off with the Ingots. The News was no sooner spread through the Eastern Parts of the Isles, than the Inhabitants entered the Western Part, where they put Man, Woman and Child to the Sword without Mercy, and fired some *Chinese* Habitations: Ever since which Time one Part of the Isle has been continually at War with the other.

*Air and
Soil.*

THAT Part of *Formosa*, possessed by the *Chinese*, deserves the Name it bears^a, being a very fine Country: The Air is pure, and always serene; it produces Plenty of Corn, Rice, and other Grain, and is watered by many Rivers, which descend from the afore-mentioned Mountains, but the Water is not very good. Most of the Fruits growing in the *Indies* are found here; as, Oranges, Bananas, Ananas, Goyavas, Papayas, Cocos, &c. as well as Peaches, Apricots, Figs, Grapes, Chestnuts, Pomegranates, and other *European* Fruits. They cultivate a Sort of Water-Melons, much larger than those of Eu-

a rope, and of an oblong Figure, though sometimes they are round: They consist of either a white or red Pulp, and are full of a cool, luscious Juice, very grateful to the *Chinese*. Tobacco and Sugar grow here exceeding well. All the Trees are so agreeably ranged, that when the Rice is transplanted in Lines and Squares as usual, the whole Southern Part looks like a vast Garden.

*Province,
Fo-kyen.*

THERE are no Boars, Wolves, Bears, Tygers or Leopards to be met with here as in *China*. b Fallow Deer, Horses, Sheep, Goats, and even Hogs, are very scarce; but Stags and Apes are seen in Herds. Pullets, Ducks and tame Geese are very plenty; as also Oxen, which serve to ride on, being furnished with a Bridle, Saddle, and Crupper.

VERY few Birds also are to be seen in this Part of the Island: The most common Sort are Pheasants, which the Fowlers will not suffer to increase.

THE *Chinese* divide the Lands they possess in *Formosa* into three *Hyen*, or subordinate Governments, with their Officers, who are subject to the Governor of the Capital, and he to the Vice-Roy of the Province of *Fo-kyen*.

THIS Capital, named *Tay-wan fu*^b, is very populous, much frequented, and of great Trade, being equal to most Cities of *China* for Goodness, and the Number of Inhabitants. There one finds Rice, Sugar, Sugar-Candy, Tobacco, Salt; dried Venison, much esteemed by the *Chinese*; all Kinds of Fruit; Linen of divers Sorts; Wool, Cotton, and Hemp; the Bark of certain Trees, and Plants resembling Nettles; Abundance of medicinal Herbs, mostly known in *Europe*, &c. There are very few Mulberry-Trees in the Island, and consequently few Silks or Manufactories of the Country.

THE Streets of *Tay-wan fu* are all strait as a Line, and though not above thirty or forty Feet wide, some are near a League in Length. They look like charming Galleries; and it would be a Pleasure to walk in them, if they were less crowded, and better paved. The Houses are covered with Straw, and built, for the most Part, only with Clay and Bambú: The Tents, where with the Streets are covered for seven or eight Months to keep-off the Sun, hide all that is disagreeable, letting nothing be seen but the Shops, adorned with Silks, *China*-Ware, Varnish, and other Goods.

The Streets.

THE Port is very good, and sheltered from all Winds, but the Entrance becomes more difficult every Day. Heretofore it had two Entrances; the one called *Ta-kyang*, where the greatest Ships rode with Ease, the other, *Lo-ulb-men*, where the Bottom is Rock, and the Depth

The Port.

^a The Portuguese call it *Hormosa*, or *The Beautiful*, as *Formosa* signifies. ^b *Psalmanaazar* is quite a Stranger to this remarkable City, which stands in a little Island close to the greater, called *Formosa*, and places two on the latter, *Aternetsa* (the Capital) and *Bigno*, which no-body else ever heard of. not

*The Geogra-
phy.* not above nine or ten Feet at the highest Tides. The first Passage is impracticable at present, for in some Places they find but five Feet Water, and the most it rises to, is seven or eight; besides, it is every Day choaked-up more and more by the Sea rolling in the Sands. *Dutch Fort.* The Dutch, to keep foreign Ships out, at the Point of the Isle, to the South of the *Ta-kyang*, built a Citadel, which they called *The Castle of Zeland*, and would be an excellent one, was it not founded on the Sand.

THE *Mandarins* are very careful to examine all that pass into or out of the Island, no *Chinese* being suffered to settle there without their Passports, and giving Security: For the *Tartars* know, that should one of them seize it, he might raise great Troubles in the Empire^a; so that the Emperor keeps a Garison there of ten thousand Men, commanded by a *Tsong-ping*, or Lieutenant-General, two *Fu-tyang*, or Major-Generals, and several inferior Officers; who are changed every three Years, or oftener, if there be Occasion.

*Other Chi-
nese Cities.* THE Inhabitants of this Part of the Island may be distinguished into the Natives and *Chinese*. *Tay-wan fu*, *Fong-shan hyen* and *Chu-lo hyen* are peopled only by the latter; for the third of the three above-mentioned *Hyen* is included in the Capital. Such Natives as are found there, are the Servants or rather the Slaves of the *Chinese*.

BESIDES these three Cities, they have several Villages, but no considerable Fort; excepting *Ngan-ping-ching*, lying under the Castle of *Zeland*, and inhabited by four or five hundred Families: Besides a Garison of two thousand Men, commanded by a *Fu-tyang*, or Major-General^b.

*Native In-
habitants.* THE *Chinese* in *Formosa* are the same, as to Government and Manners, as in *China*. The Natives, who are subject to them, are divided into forty-five Boroughs, or Habitations, called *She*. The thirty-six in the Northern Part are populous enough, and the Houses very like the *Chinese*^c: But the Southern nine are no more than Parcels of Cottages made of Earth and Bambu, covered with Straw, and raised on a Kind of Terrass three or four Foot high. They are built in Form of a Tunnel inverted, and fifteen, twenty, thirty or forty Feet in Diameter: Some of them are divided by Partition-Walls. There are in these Huts neither Chairs, Benches, Tables, Beds, nor any Moveables. In the Middle is a Kind of Chimney, or Stove, raised above two Feet from the Ground, where they dress their Victuals. Their ordinary Diet is Rice,

a small Grain, and Game, which these Southern Inhabitants take either with Arms, or by running; having been seen to out-strip Horses in their full Speed. The *Chinese* attribute their Swiftnes to their Knees and Loins being bound exceeding tight, till the Age of fourteen or fifteen.

*Persons and
Diet.* THE Men^d are of an easy, slender Shape, Olive Complexion, with sleek Hair hanging over their Shoulders. They have a Sort of Dart, which they throw the Space of seventy or eighty Paces with the greatest Dexterity; and though nothing is more simple than their Bows and Arrows, yet they kill Pheasants flying.

THEY are very slovenly in their Diet, having neither Dishes, Plates, Spoons, nor Chop-sticks. Their Victuals are served on a Piece of Wood, or Mat, and they feed themselves with their Fingers. They eat their Flesh half raw, it being enough if but shewn to the Fire. They lie on the Floor spread with the Leaves of a certain Tree.

*Dress and
Ornaments.* THEIR whole Apparel is a single Cloth, two or three Feet long, wherewith they are covered round from the Waist down to the Knees. Some imprint several grotesque Figures of Trees, Animals, Flowers, &c. on their Skin. This Privilege, which is allowed only to such as excel in running and hunting, costs them dear: For it puts them to such violent Pain, that the Operation would kill them, was the Whole to be performed at once; they therefore employ several Months, and sometimes a whole Year, about it: Nevertheless, all Persons are at Liberty to blacken their Teeth, wear Bobs in their Ears, Bracelets above their Elbows and Wrists, Necklaces and Coronets, consisting of several Rows of small Grains of different Colours. These Coronets end with a Kind of Plume of Cocks or Pheasants Feathers.

IN the North Part of the Island they cover themselves with the Skins of Stags, made into a Sort of Coat, without Sleeves, much like a Dalmatic^e. They wear a Bonnet of Banana Leaves, in Form of a Cylinder, which they adorn with Coronets, placed one over another, and fastened with very narrow Bands, or little Locks of Hair of different Colours; having on the Top a Tuft or Plume, as above-mentioned.

Marriages. WHEN a young Man has a Mind to marry, and meets with a Lass to his Mind, he goes several Days successively with Music to her Door: If the young Woman likes her Spark, she goes out to him, where they settle Terms between themselves; after which, acquainting their Pa-

^a As *Que-sing* or *Koxinga* did.

^b *Du Halde's China*, p. 86, & seqq.

^c *Candidius* says, they are very stately and lofty, beyond what is found in other Parts of *India*.

^d *Candidius* says, the Men are more than ordinary tall; the Women short and fat: *Psalmanaazaar*, that they are short, thick, and robust.

^e A Dalmatic is a Kind of Cope, or Vestment, which Deacons, Sub-deacons, and even Bishops, put-on when they officiate.

The Geogra-
phy.

rents with the Matter, they prepare the Wedding-Feast. This is made at the House of the Bride's Father, where the Bridegroom continues^a, as the Brides in *Europe* do at the Houses of their Husbands Father. Hence they place their good Fortune not in having Boys, but Girls, who procure them Sons-in-Law, to be the Props of their old Age.

Government.

ALTHOUGH the Islanders in this Division are intirely subject to the *Chinese*, yet they still preserve some Remains of their ancient Govern-^bment. Each Borough chuses three or four of the most ancient, who are in greatest Repute for Integrity, to be Judges over them: These determine all Differences absolutely; and if any one refuses to submit to their Decision, he is driven that Instant out of the Borough, without Hopes of ever being admitted there again; nor dares any other receive him.

To regulate what concerns the Tribute, which they pay in Grain, the Tails or Skins of Stags, and the like, there is in every Borough a *Chinese*, who learns the Language, to serve as an Interpreter to the *Mandarins*. But instead of procuring Ease to these poor People, they act as so many petty Tyrants, and tire-out the Patience not only of them, but the *Mandarins* themselves, who are forced to let them continue in their Employments, to avoid greater Inconveniences. There were formerly twelve Boroughs in the South subject to the *Chinese*; but three of them^d revolting, drove-out their Interpreters, and united themselves with those of the Eastern Part of the Island: However, under the present Emperor, a great Number of Towns have submitted, and they hope, by little and little, that the rest will follow their Example.

Morals and
Religion.

ONE finds among them, by the Confession of the *Chinese* themselves, no cheating, thieving, quarrelling, nor any Law-Suits, except against their Interpreters; and they practise all the Duties of Equity and Benevolence. Whatever is given to any of them, must not be touched by him, till those who shared the Labour, partake of the Wages. The Missioners found several of them who understood *Dutch*, read their Books, and made use of their Characters in writing. They also saw in their Hands some Fragments of Scripture in the same Tongue. These People adore no Images, and even abhor whatever tends

that Way. They perform no religious Worship,⁴ nor say any Prayers^b: Yet the Jesuits met with some who believed in one God, in three Persons, in the Creation and Fall of Man, and the Virtue of Baptism; for in the Time of the *Dutch* there were some Christians among them.

Province,
Fo-kyen.

THE *Chinese*, according to their History, had^c no Knowledge of *Formosa*, though not far distant, till about the Year 1430, when the Eunuch *Wan-san-pau*, returning from the West, was driven thither by a Tempest; and made some Stay there, in order to get the best Intelligence he could of it. In 1564, *Yu-ta-yew*, Chief of a Squadron, cruizing in the Eastern Sea of *China*, a bold *Corfair*, named *Lin-tau-kyen*, met-with and attacked him briskly: But after a Fight of five Hours, Night coming-on, he fled towards the Isles of *Pong-hu*, which he had seized with an Intention to take all the rest of his Soldiers on-board, and return to the Charge. However, *Yu-ta-yew* pursued him so closely, that at Break of Day *Lin-tau-kyen* found the Entrance of the Port blocked-up by Part of the Enemy's Ships. His Troops being much diminished in the Fight, he judged it dangerous to attempt entering the Port, and continued his Course to *Formosa*.

YU-TA-YEW pursued him thither, but^e finding the Sea shallow, and having no Know-ledge of the Coast, he returned to *Pong hu*; where having left a good Garison, he sailed to *China*. The Court was pleased with his Discoveries, and sent a literary *Mandarin* to govern those Isles. Mean-while *Lin-tau-kyen*, who had great Things in View, not thinking *Formosa* fit for his Purpose, cut the Throats of all the Inhabitants who fell into his Hands; and making use of their Blood to caulk his Ships, put to Sea as soon as he could for the Province of *Quang-tong*, where he died miserably^f.

TOWARDS the End of the Year 1620, a *Ja-*^{By the Ja-}^{panese and}^{Dutch.} *panese* Squadron landed on *Formosa*, whose commanding Officer intending to subdue it, left Part of his People there to inform themselves concerning it. About the same Time a *Dutch* Ship, in its Course to or from *Japan*, being driven thither by Storm, and finding the Country commodious for their Trade, intreated the *Japanese* to let them build a House at the Entrance of the Port, under Pretence, that it would be serviceable in their Commerce with *Japan*; and as they

^a *Candidus* says, the Man and Wife dwell in separate Houses: That he never goes to her but by Night, without her Leave: That the Marriage does not take Place without the Consent of Parents: That the Women keep the Children till three Years old, and then send them home to their Father: That they are made to miscarry of all the Children they have before they are thirty-five Years old, by their Priestesses lying on and pressing their Bellies.

^b *Candidus* says, they believe in many Gods, and offer Prayers and Sacrifices to them by their Priestesses, for they have no Priests. His Account of these People differs almost in every Thing from that of the Missioners; and *Psalmannaazar*, who speaks of Priests, but not Priestesses. This last Author pretends, that they have a revealed Religion, which teaches the Belief of one God, who appears to them in the Shape of various Animals; and has commanded the Hearts of eighteen or twenty thousand Children to be torn-out by the Priests, and burnt on his Altar at the Beginning of every Year. See the Description of *Formosa*, p. 171, and 178.

^c *Du Halde's China*, p. 88, & seqq.

^d promised

The Geogra-
phy.
Fort Zelinda
built.

promised to take no more Ground than what an a Ox-Hide would inclose^a, the *Japanese* at last consented. The *Dutch* immediately went to work, and cutting the Hide into very narrow Thongs, joined the Ends together, and there-with measured-out the Ground. Here they built the Fort already spoken of, on the Gate whereof are still to be seen these Words, *Castel Zelanda*, 1634.

THE *Japanese*, who were at first angry at this Piece of Fraud, were soon pacified: But whether they took Umbrage at the new Fort, or did not find their Account in the Island, which continued still unimproved, they presently after abandoned it: And then the *Dutch*, the better to secure the Port, built, on the other Side of it, a House, fortified with four Semi-Bastions: The Islanders being in no Condition to oppose them^b.

Chinese fer-
tile there.

WE have elsewhere related^c, that the *Dutch* quitted the Islands of *Pe-hú*^d, or the *Piscadores*, to settle on *Formosa*; upon a Promise of the *Mandarins*, that they should trade in *China*, and the *Chinese* should come and trade thither with them. This is the more probable Account of their first Establishment at *Tay-wan*. The Wars of *China* being over, more than twenty-five thousand *Chinese*, fit for bearing Arms, retired from their Country, and came to dwell on that Island with their Families; some of whom applied themselves to cultivate the Lands, and others to Commerce.

Koxinga's
Design

KOXINGA being obliged to abandon *China*, resolved to seize *Formosa*. This was not kept so secret, but it came to the Ears of the *Dutch*. The Company had Advice of it, from *Japan*, so early as 1646: Hereupon, in 1650, it was resolved to keep a Garison there of one thousand two hundred Men. In 1652, a Jesuit, who returned to *Europe* in the *Dutch* Fleet, assured them of that Rover's Design: In effect, that same Year the *Chinese* Peasants revolted, though few of them had Arms: But the *Dutch* being joined by the Natives, soon suppressed them^e. They had been too hasty in their Measures, Koxinga then being engaged in some Project against the Court of *China*; so that he could not succour them at that Time. To awe them next Year, Fort *Province* was built in the Island, on the Side of the Channel, which divides it from *Tay-wan*, and was then called *Sakkam*.

Against For-
mosa.

THE Suspicions of an Attack being increased by scarce any Junks coming to trade, in 1654 and 1655, they sent some Vessels to the *Piscadores* to get Intelligence; which brought a

Confirmation of the Danger. However, next Year, Coyet, the Governor, sent one *Pin-qua*, a *Chinese*, to renew Friendship with *Koxinga*; who protested, his Design was to live in Peace with the *Hollanders*; and that his having Occasion for the Junks, was the Reason why they had ceased going as usual to *Formosa*. After this, Commerce flourished more than ever. But, in 1659, it being discovered, that *Pin-qua* had secretly received of the Junks, that traded thither, Customs for *Koxinga*, and the Governor having thereupon seized his Effects, that Officer escaped to the Coast of *China*; and, as it is said, spurred on *Koxinga* to execute his long meditated Design. This General having been defeated by the *Tartars* in his Attempt against *Nan-king*, and forced to retire to the Coasts, and the Isle of *A-moi*, great Numbers of his Party fled to *Formosa* in 1658 and 1659; spreading the Report, that they would soon be followed by the rest of the Forces.

Province,
Fo-kyen.

HOWEVER, this Expedition did not take Place till April 1661, when *Koxinga* appeared with a numerous Fleet, carrying twenty-five thousand Troops, before the Castle of *Zeland*, the thirty-first of that Month: During all this Time, the Council of *Batavia*, consisting of Merchants, lulled a-sleep, by the Advice of *Verburgh*, (who, in Pique to his Successor *Coyet*, treated all the Intelligence he sent from Time to Time, as Chimeras) and their own Covetousness, neglected either to fortify the Place, or re-inforce the Garison; which consisted of about one thousand four hundred Men. However, they held-out, with very little Assistance from *Batavia*, till the Beginning of the Year 1662; and then surrendered upon better Terms than they expected. *Koxinga* and his Successors reigned as Kings in *Formosa* till 1682, when the last of them submitted to the Emperor *Kang-hi*; as hath been already related^f.

SITUATIONS of Places in Fo-kyen, determined in the Year 1713.

Places.	Latitude.	Longitude.	Table of Situations.
<i>Fú-chew fú</i> - -	26 2 24	3 00 00	
<i>Fong-ting-i</i> - -	25 14 27	2 37 50	
<i>Swen-chew fú</i> - -	24 56 12	2 22 40	
<i>Tong-ngán hyen</i> - -	24 44 24	1 50 50	
<i>Cháng-chew fú</i> - -	24 31 12	1 24 00	
<i>Cháng-pu hyen</i> - -	24 7 12	1 20 00	
<i>Ting-chew fú</i> - -	25 44 54	0 1 5	
<i>U ping hyen</i> - -	25 4 48	0 16 00	
<i>Yong-ting hyen</i> - -	24 44 54	0 24 00	

^a The same Stratagem was used by the *Phenicians* in building *Byrsa*; afterwards called *Carthage*. ^b Du Halde's *China*, p. 90, & seqq. ^c See Vol. III. p. 496. ^d Or, *Pong-hú*. ^e Montanus relates the Particulars of this Insurrection. See *Ogilby's China*, vol. 2. p. 37. ^f *Recueil des Voy. de la Comp. des Ind. Orient.* vol. 5. p. 533, & seqq. ^g See Vol. III. p. 439, & seqq.

The Geogra- phy.	Places.	Latitude.	Longitude.
	Shau-ü fû - -	27 21 36	1 8 00
	Kyen-ning fû - -	27 3 36	1 59 25
	Kyen-ning hyen - -	26 48 30	0 30 40
	Yen-ping fû - -	26 38 24	1 49 20
	Pü-ching hyen - -	28 00 30	2 9 10
	Kyen-yang hyen - -	27 22 44	1 44 00
	Tsong-ngân hyen - -	27 45 36	1 39 20
	Fü-ning chew - -	26 54 00	3 40 00
	Fü-ngân hyen - -	27 4 48	3 18 40
	Lo-ywen hyen - -	26 26 24	3 16 30
	Hing-wah fû - -	25 25 22	2 48 50
	Ming-tsing hyen - -	26 13 12	2 33 20
	Fü-tsing hyen - -	25 40 48	3 8 00
	Lyen-ching hyen - -	25 37 12	0 21 20
	Chau-ngân hyen - -	23 43 12	0 49 50
	Nan-ngân-ching - -	23 28 48	0 48 20
	Hay-tân-ching - -	25 33 24	3 33 50
	Hyä-men-fo, or A-mwi - -	24 27 36	1 50 30
	Yong fû hyen - -	25 46 48	2 33 20
	Kin-men-fo - -	24 26 24	2 10 40
	Che-yang-pau - -	26 34 48	3 41 30

Island of Formosa.

Isle of Pong-hü - -	23 34 48	3 1 00
Tay-wân fû - -	23 00 00	3 32 50
Pong-shan hyen - -	22 40 48	3 37 50
Shä-mä-hi-tew - -	22 6 00	4 9 20
Chu-lo hyen - -	23 27 36	3 44 00
Tân-shwi-ching - -	25 7 10	4 43 30
Ki-long-chay - -	25 16 48	5 9 30

S E C T. V.

Che-kyang, the fifth Province.

Bounds and Soil. Silk. Golden Fish. Tallow Tree. Pe-tü Fruit. Division. Hang-chew fû, very populous. The Silk Country. Charm-ing Lake. Kya-hing fû. Hu-chew fû. Ning-po fû. Canal of Ning-po. Walli and Gates. Tin-hay hyen. Island Chew-fhan: Harbour and Façtory. Islands Pou-to and Kimpeton. Shau-hing fû. Tomb of Yu. Tay-chew fû. Kin-wha fû. Kyu-chew fû. Yen-chew fû. Wen-chew fû. Chau-chew fû.

**Bounds and
Soil.**

THIS Province is one of the most fertile and flourishing, as to Trade, in the whole Em-pire. It is bounded on the East by the Sea; on the South by Fo-kyen; on the North and West by Kyang-nan and Kyang-si, with which it is sur-rounded. The whole Country is cut with Ri-vers and Canals: These last are broad and deep, lined on both Sides with Stone, covered with Bridges at certain Distances; so that one may travel all over the Province either by Water or

a Land. It abounds also with Lakes and running Springs. The Mountains are cultivated, or pro-duce Timber for building Ships and Houses.

Its Inhabitants are very mild, ingenious, and polite. The Silks, produced and manufactured here, are almost sufficient to supply foreign Coun-tries. Those embroidered with Gold and Silver, are the best in all China; and so cheap, that a Suit of it costs less than one of the most ordinary Cloth in Europe. Hence one sees a great Num-ber of Fields full of dwarf Mulberry-Trees, which they hinder to grow, by planting and cut-ting them almost like Vines; being convinced, by long Experience, that the Leaves of the smal-lest Trees produce the best Silk.

PROVISIONS are very plentiful. Here are ex-cel-lent Cray-Fish; and, in the Lakes, the Golden Fish are found. Mushrooms are carried hence all over the Empire: They keep, salted and dried, all the Year round: By only letting them lie in Water, they become as good and fresh as if they had been just gathered.

THE best Hams come from this Province. Here also grows the Tallow-Tree, and those es-teemed Shrubs that bear a very white Flower, resembling the Jasmin, but more leafy. A single Flower is sufficient to perfume a whole House.

THE Fruit, called Pe-tü, is much more com-mon in this Province than elsewhere; it grows in marshy Water, and is as big as a Chestnut. Its Kernel is covered with a very thin Skin; the Pulp is white, and full of an agreeable Juice; it is firm, and somewhat sour. Martini affirms, that if one puts a Piece of Copper-Coin with this Fruit in his Mouth, he may break it easily with his Teeth: But other Missionaries found it not so.

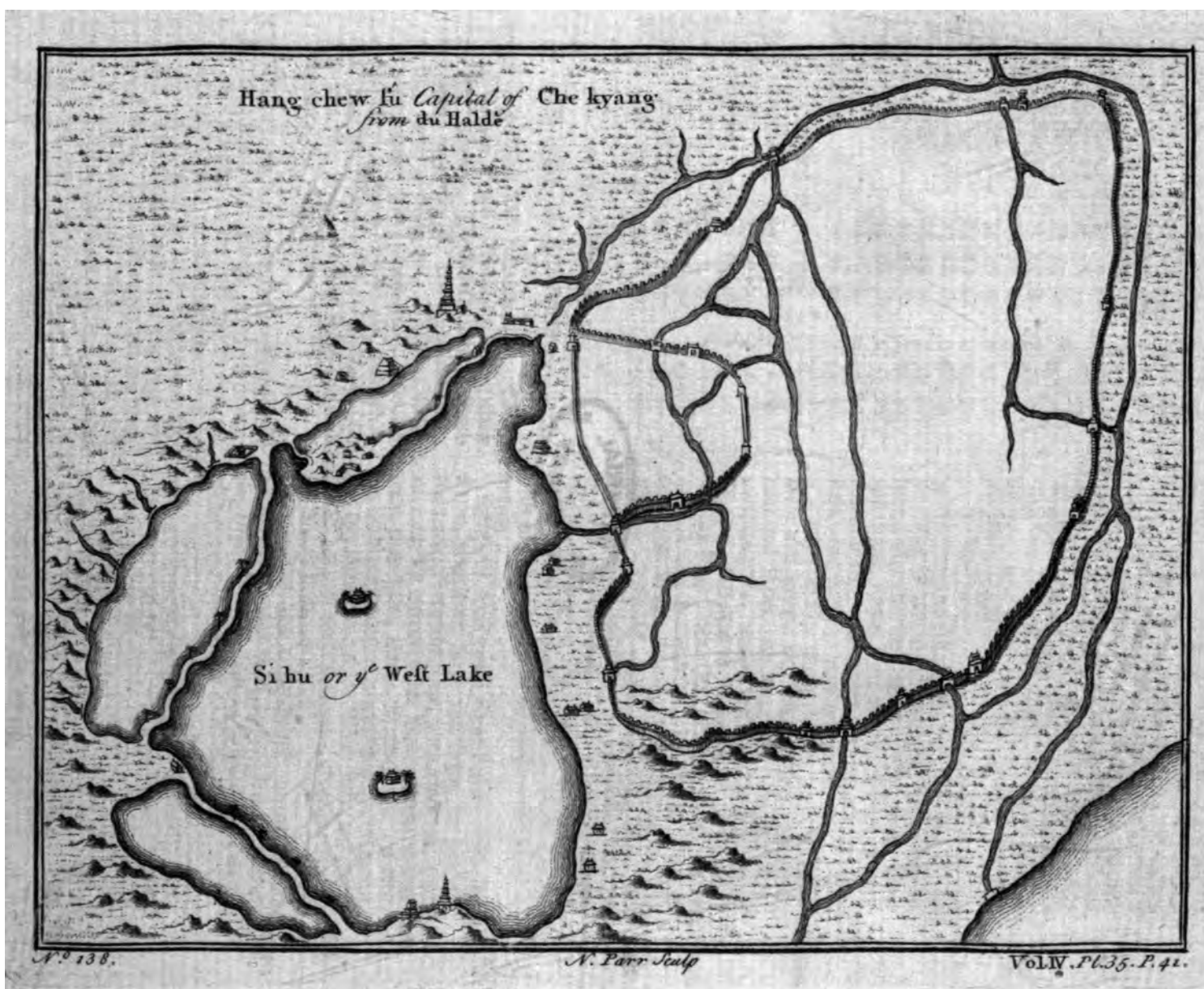
CHE-KYANG yields whole Forests of Bambü Canes, which are large and strong for bearing Burdens. Notwithstanding their Hardness, they are easily slit into very thin Slips, wherewith they make their Mats, Boxes, Combs, &c. As they are by Nature bored through, they are very proper for Pipes, to convey Water from one Place to another; or for Telescopes, to serve either as a Tube, a Case, or a Rest.

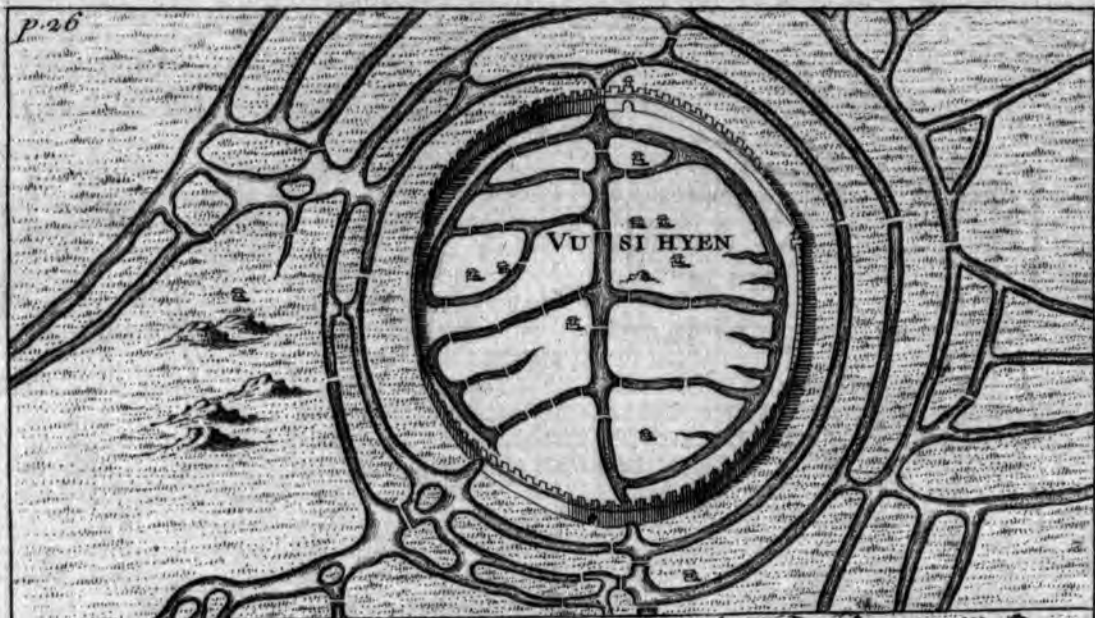
THIS Province is subdivided into eleven, which have under them seventy-seven Cities of the third Rank, besides an infinite Number of very populous Boroughs and Villages.

	Chew.	Hyen.
1. Hang-chew fû, governs -	0	9
2. Kya-hing fû - -	0	7
3. Hü-chew fû - -	1	6
4. Ning-po fû - -	0	6 ^b
5. Shau-hing fû - -	0	8
6. Tay-chew fû - -	0	6

^a Du Halde's China, p. 93, & seq.

^b In the Description, only 4.





The Geogra-
phy.

			Chew.	Hyen.
7.	Kin-wha fū	-	o	8
8.	Kyu-chew fū	-	o	5
9.	Nyen, or Yen-chew fū	-	o	6
10.	Wen-chew fū	-	o	5
11.	Chu-chew fū	-	o	10 ^a

Hang-chew
fū,

1. **HANG-CHEW FU**, the Capital of the Province, is one of the richest and largest Cities of the Empire. It is considerable, especially on Account of its most advantageous Situation, prodigious Number of Inhabitants, the Convenience of its Canals, and its Trade for the best Silk in the World.

THE Chinese reckon it, *The terrestrial Paradise*. It is almost round, and forty *Li*^b, or four Leagues in Compass, exclusive of the Suburbs, which are immense; from the Eastern Gate to the Northern, they reckon ten *Li*^b. Its Walls are fair, very high, and thick. Though there are large Gardens in the City, and the Houses are but of one Story, yet it is astonishingly crowded; the Number of Inhabitants amounting to a Million. A Christian Bachelor assured a Missionary, that, within the Walls only, the Officers who gather the Tax, had on their Rolls about three hundred thousand *Hū*, or Families.

Very popu-
lous

THE Water of the Canals within the City is not good. Those of the Suburbs bear a prodigious Number of Barks, inhabited by intire Families. The Streets are not wide; but adorned with triumphal Arches. The Shops very neat, and the Dealers very rich: There are in *Hang-chew* four great Towers, several Stories high. The Garrison consists of seven thousand *Tartars*, (who have a Fortrefs here) under the *Tjyang-kyun*, or *Tartar* General; and three thousand Chinese, under the *Fū-ywen*, or Vice-Roy. The River called *Tjyen-tang-kyang*, runs near its Walls; where it is a great League in Breadth^c.

The Country
for Silk.

HANG-CHEW is, properly, the Country of Silk, because the chief Manufactories are there. They say, there are six thousand Workmen within its Walls; and the Villages every-where are full of them. The flowered Taffeties and Satins, named *Lin-tse*, and others all plain, called *Lau-fang-se*, made in this City, are reckoned the best in the whole Empire.

Charming
Lake.

WHAT renders this Place delightful, is the Lake *Si-hū*^d, which is close to it, and two Leagues in Compass. The Water is good, and clear as Crystal; so that the smallest Stones may be seen at the Bottom^e. On the Side where the

a Water is low, it is covered with the *Lyen-wha*⁵ Province, Che-kyang. Flowers. They have raised there, upon Stakes, open Halls, sustained by Pillars, and paved with great square Stones, for the Convenience of those who would walk on-foot. They have also made Causeways, lined with Freestone; and over the Openings, left for Boats to pass, built pretty handsome Bridges.

IN the midst of the Lake, there are two little Islands, where they have built a Temple and Houses fit for diverting themselves. The Sides of the Lake are likewise adorned with Temples, huge Monasteries of the *Bonzas*, and pretty handsome Houses: Among which is a little Palace for the Use of the Emperor, who lodged there when he travelled into the Southern Provinces^f.

2. THE City of *Kya-hing fū* is great, very populous, and of considerable Trade. Its Suburbs^g are of very great Extent. Into every Street of the City they have brought Canals, lined with fine Freestone; which, as well as the Ditches, are covered with handsome Bridges. In all the Streets there are handsome Piazzas; and triumphal Arches are frequent enough. There are fifteen Marble Towers, on the Sides of the Canal, to the West of the City, through which all the Barks pass. Every House in it rears Silk-Worms. The Fruit, called *Pe-tsi*, spoken of before, is common. In Autumn they catch certain little Birds; which are preserved in Wine made of Rice, and sold all the Year round. Very good Cray-Fish are taken here. There are plentiful Salt-Pits near *Hay-yen hyen*, which stands on the Sea-Coast. One sees on all Sides Silk Manufactures. The whole District is flat, without so much as one Hill.

3. **HU CHEW FU** takes its Name from the *Hu-chew* great Lake^h on the Side whereof it stands. It isⁱ one of the greatest and most considerable Cities in China, on Account of its Riches, Trade, Fertility of its Lands, and Beauty of its Waters and Hills. It is inconceivable what a Quantity of Silk is made there. The Tribute paid therein, by *Te-tsin hyen*, one of its dependent Cities, amounts to five hundred thousand *Tails*, or Ounces of Silver. The best Pencils for Writing with are made here: And its District yields abundance of Tea.

4. **NING-PO FU**, which the Portuguese^j Ning-po fū. have called *Liampo*, is a very good Port, on the Eastern Coast, over-against Japan. It stands on the Confluence of two small Rivers; the *Kin* coming from the South, and the *Yau* from West

^a Du Haldé's China, p. 5.^b These *Li* must be three hundred and sixty Paces each.^c But, *Le Comte*

says, that a little higher, it is a useless Torrent, running through Rocks.

^d Or, *The West Lake*.^e *Le**Comte* affirms, it is very shallow; but deep enough for flat-bottomed Boats for Pleasure.^f The same Author,

p. 82, says, there is not the least Sign of the stately Houses and Palaces with which some surround this Lake;

and nothing to be seen but some wooden thatched Dwellings, common in China.

^g *Hū*, signifies a Lake.

*The Geogra-
phy.*

North-West; which form the Canal from thence a to the Sea, capable of bearing *Chinese* Vessels of two hundred Tons. These Rivers water a Plain almost encompassed with Hills, which form a Kind of oval Basin; whose Diameter, from East to West, passing through the City, may be ten or twelve thousand *Chinese* Fathom, of ten Feet each. The Length from South to North is much greater.

*Canal of
Ning-po.*

THIS Plain, which is level and well improved, like a Garden, is full of Villages and Hamlets. It is cut by a great Number of Canals, formed by the Waters that fall from the Hills. The Canal, on which Part of the Eastern Suburb stands, extends to the very Foot of them, and divides into three Branches. It may be about five or six thousand Fathoms long, and six or seven broad. In this Space, there are sixty-six Canals issuing from the Sides of the principal Canal; several of which are broader than it. Hence the Plain is rendered exceeding fruitful, and yields two Harvests of Rice. They sow Cotton and Pulse. Tallow Trees are very numerous here. The Air is generally pure; the Country pleasant and open. The Sea furnishes Plenty of Fish, especially good Cray-Fish; and a delicious Sort, called *Whang*; that is, *Yellow*; which are caught in the Beginning of Summer, and transported in Glasses all over the Empire.

*Walls and
Gates.*

THE Walls of *Ning-po* are five geometrical Miles and seventy-four Paces in Compass. They are built of Freestone, and able to withstand any Force but Cannon. The Distance from the Western to the Eastern Gate, is two Miles one-half and seventy-four great Paces. It has five Gates; two towards the East, because the Port is on that Side: Not to mention two great Arches, called by the *Chinese*, Water-Gates, made in the Walls, for the Barks to pass: There being many Canals in the South-West Part of the City. One sees here a Brick Tower, several Stories high; and, before the most Southern of the two Gates, a Bridge, over the River *Kin*, of sixteen flat-bottomed Barks, fastened with Iron, forty Fathoms long. Besides these, there is not one Building worth Notice in the whole Place; excepting the *Pay-lew*, or *Pay-fan*, which *Europeans* call *Triumphal Arches*. The Streets, which are narrow, are still more contracted by the Penthouses over the Shops; so that two of our large Coaches would have much ado to pass. This City was sacked in the last Wars; but, of late, it has recovered again, and is provided with a large Garison.

THE Entrance to *Ning-po* is difficult, especially for great Vessels; the Bar not having above fifteen Feet Water in the Spring-Tides. You leave on the left Hand *Tin-hay hyen*^a, one of its dependent Cities; which is an oblong Square, a thousand *French* Fathom in Compass. It is commanded by a Citadel on a very high Rock; at the Foot whereof Ships must necessarily pass, within the Distance of half Pistol-shot. One Tide brings them up along a very fine River, an hundred and fifty Fathoms broad, and everywhere seven or eight deep, with Salt houses on both Sides; and a Prospect of Villages and cultivated Plains, as far as the Mountains.

THE *Chinese* Merchants of *Siam* and *Batavia* come to *Ning-po* every Year, to buy Silks; which are the fairest in the Empire. Those of *Fo-kyen*, and other Provinces, resort thither continually. This City has also a great Trade with *Japan*; *Nangazaki* being only two Days sailing from hence. They carry thither Silk, raw and manufactured, Sugar, Drugs, and Wine; and bring back Copper, Gold, and Silver.

EIGHTEEN or twenty Leagues from *Ning-po*, Island in the Sea, is the Island *Chew-shan*. The Port is very good, but not commodious for Trade. The *English*, at their first Arrival, put in there by Accident; not being able to find out the Way to *Ning-po* through so many Islands as are upon the Coast^b. Mr. *Cunningham*^c informs us, that the *Chinese* granted them a Settlement and Liberty to Trade; but not at *Ning-po*. This being the largest of the Islands, is eight or nine Leagues from East to West, four or five in Breadth, and three from *Kbi-tu* Point; called by the *Portuguese*, Cape *Liamo*.

THE Harbour lies at the West End of the Island. It is very safe and convenient; the Ships riding within Call of the Factory, which is built close by the Shore, in a low Valley, with near two hundred Houses about it, for the Benefit of Trade, inhabited only by Men: Their Wives dwell in a Town three Quarters of a Mile from the Coast, inclosed with a handsome Wall three Miles in Compass, fenced with twenty-two square Bastions. It has four Gates, planted with a few old Iron Guns, seldom used. Here the *Chong-ping*^d, or Governor, resides; and three or four thousand beggarly Inhabitants, most part Soldiers and Fishermen, in very mean Houses: For the Trade, being but newly granted, had not yet brought any considerable Merchants thither. The Island, which is pretty populous, abounds with all Sorts of Cattle, Fowl, Roots,

^a Here seems to be a double Mistake; for *Tin-hay hyen*, which is on the Island *Chew-shan*, (above nine Leagues from the Mouth of the River *Ning-po*) is put instead of *Chin-hay hyen*; and this last stands on the right Hand, in respect of those who enter the River. ^b *Du Halde's China*, p. 94, & seq. Also *Le Comte*, p. 86.

^c He made the Voyage to *Chew-shan* in 1700, or 1701. He writes *Chu-san*. ^d In the Original, *Chumpeen*.

and

The Geogra-
phy.

and other Provisions. But the Merchandize comes a
all from *Ning-po*, *Hang-chew*, *Nan-king*, and other
Cities on the Continent. The Tea grows on
the Hills here; but not so good as elsewhere.

Islands Pou-
to,

THREE Miles East of *Chew-shan* lies the Island
Pou-to, about five Leagues round, a Place of
great Pilgrimage ^a for one thousand six hundred
Years past. Hither the Emperor was to have
come on his Birth-Day, in the fortieth Year of
his Reign ^b, but was diverted by his *Mandarins*;
who pretended, it was subject to terrible Thun-
der. It is inhabited only by three thousand of
the *Ho-shang*, or unmarried *Benzas*, who have
built four hundred Temples. In two of them,
confiderable for their Bigness and Form, are two
High-Priests, over the rest. Their Houses are
the best in these Parts. The Island is crossed with
Roads; some flagged, and shaded with Trees.
The Junks bound from *Ning-po* to *Japan* touch
here, to make their Offerings.

And Kimp-
tong.

FIVE Leagues from *Chew-shan*, in the Way c
to *Ning-po*, is the Island *Kimp-tong*; where, it
is said, there are Silver Mines; and *Mandarins*,
out of Employment, retire, to enjoy an easy
Life. The rest of the circumjacent Islands are
either desert, or inhabited only by Fishermen:
But all stored with Deer.

CHEW-SHAN having been quite destroyed
in the last *Tartar* Wars, continued so till about
1684, that the present Town was built to expel
some Pirate. Four Years after, it began to be d
re-peopled; and a *Chong-ping*, or General, was
sent to govern it ^e.

Shau-hing
fü.

5. *SHAU-HING FU* is situated in one of
the finest Plains in the World; and much like
Venice. Every Street has a Canal, covered with
high one-arched Bridges; so that one may enter
the City by Boat on any Side.

THE Streets, which run along the Canals, are
very large and handsome, paved with white
Stones six or seven Feet long, and adorned with
triumphal Arches. The Walls have a Ditch e
within as well as without; and the City being
reckoned, at least, four Leagues in Compass, is
divided into two *Hyen*, or subordinate Jurisdic-
tions, which have their distinct Governors; one
called *Shan-in*, the other *Quey-ki*.

SEVERAL of the Houses are built with exceed-
ing white Freestone, (which is scarce ever seen
in the other Cities of *China*) dug out of the
Mountain *Nyau-men-shan*, two Leagues distant. f
The Inhabitants of *Shau-hing* are the most noted
in all *China* for Quirks of the Law: Though
being otherwise good Lawyers, there is no Vice-
Roy, or *Mandarin*, but what has one of them
for his *Syang-kong*, or Secretary. This City is

famous all over the Empire for the Wine made s. Province,
here, as well as for the Tomb ^d of the Great *Yu*, Che-kyang.
one of the first Monarchs; who obtained the Tomb of Yu.
Throne by the Service he did his Country, in
causing the Sea, which had overflowed Part of
the Empire, to retire. There is near it also a
remarkable Hill, called, from its Figure, *Hew-
shan*, or *The Mountain of the Ape*; where the
People go to divert themselves.

6. *TAY-CHEW FU* stands on a River, in a Tay chew
Country over-run with Mountains. It is not by fü.
far so confiderable as the other Cities. It is re-
markable for a Kind of Ray, or Thorn-back,
caught there in the Sea; with whose Skin, which
serves for several Uses, especially in making Scab-
bards for Hangers, they drive a great Trade;
transporting it to *Japan*, as well as through the
Empire.

7. *KIN-WHA FU* stands in the Middle of Kin-wha
the Province, by a pretty handsome River. It fü.
was formerly very great, and famous for the
Beauty of its Buildings: But having long with-
stood the whole Power of the *Tartars*, they
burnt one Part of the City, and a great Bridge
on the West Side; which have been since rebuilt.
Rice grows here plentifully; and the Wine made
of it, is much esteemed in the Country. A great
Trade is carried on also with large dried Plumbs
and Hams; which are sent into all the Provinces.
Those little Shrubs, whose white Flower resem-
bles the *Jasmin*, and the Tallow-Tree, are found
almost every-where in its District.

8. *KYU-CHEW FU* is built on a fine Ri-Kyu-chew
ver, and between two other smaller ones that fü.
fall into it. It is the most Southern City in the
Province, bordering on *Kyang-fi* and *Fo-kyen*.
The Road leading into this latter Province, is very
difficult; it begins about the City *Kyang-shan
byen*, and continues over pretty steep Mountains
for near thirty Leagues together. They have
made Stairs, winding round one of them, con-
sisting of more than three hundred Steps of flat
Stones, to render the Ascent more easy. There
are Inns, all the Way, at certain Distances.

9. ALTHOUGH the Walls of *Yen-chew fü*, Yen-chew
or *Nyen-chew fü*, are washed by a River, which, fü.
not far off, falls into another, that bears pretty
large Barks, yet it is not to be compared to the
rest of the Cities of the Province; either for
Bigness, Wealth, or Number of Inhabitants.
Its Territory is incumbered with Hills and Moun-
tains. In it Mines are found; and one meets
with the Trees that distil the Varnish. The
Paper made here, is no less esteemed.

10. *WHEN-CHEW FU* is situated in a When-
marshy Soil, very near the Sea; and the Beauty chew fü.

^a Not *Chew-shan*, as *Martini* relates.

^b The Year 1702.

^c See *Philosophical Transactions*,
N^o 280. p. 1201. also the *Abridgment*, vol. 5. part 2. p. 178, & seqq.

^d A Mile and an half from the City.

G 2

of

The Geograph. of its Buildings have gotten it the Name of *Little a*
phy. *Hang chew.* The Tide comes up to its very
Walls; where there is a commodious Harbour.
Its District is divided into Plains and Mountains:
The first, very fertile; but some of the latter,
frightful to look at; especially those towards the
Province of *Fo-kyen.*

Chau-chew
fû.

II. *CHU-CHEW FU* is situate on a fine
River, navigable to the Sea. It is invironed by
Mountains, covered with fair Trees; among
which are Pines, used for building Houses and
Ships; the Hollow of whose Trunk would hold
thirty Men.

THE Sides of the Brooks are covered with
whole Forests of Bambû Canes^a; some more than
twenty Feet high, and the smallest ten. These
Canes burnt, when green and fresh cut, yield a
Water, which, being drank, the Physicians pre-
tend, rectifies the Blood coagulated by a Bruise
or Fall^b.

SITUATIONS of Places in Che-kyang, deter-
mined in the Year 1714.

Places.	Latitude.	Longitude.
<i>Hang-chew fû</i> - -	30 20 20	3 39 4
— by <i>P. Noël</i> - -	30 14 34	0 00 00
<i>Fû-yang hyen</i> - -	30 4 57	3 27 7
<i>Tu-tfyen hyen</i> - -	30 14 27	2 54 27
<i>Kyâ-bing fû</i> - -	30 52 48	4 4 11
<i>Ping-bû hyen</i> - -	30 43 00	4 17 24
<i>Hû-chew fû</i> - -	30 52 48	3 27 54
<i>Chang-bing hyen</i> - -	31 1 10	3 14 27
<i>Yen-chew fû</i> - -	29 37 12	3 4 17
<i>Kyu-chew fû</i> - -	29 2 33	2 35 12
<i>Kay-whâ hyen</i> - -	29 9 15	2 7 18
<i>Kin-whâ fû</i> - -	29 10 48	3 22 27
<i>I-â hyen</i> - -	29 20 15	3 43 15
<i>Yong-kang hyen</i> - -	28 58 00	3 43 15
<i>Shau-bing fû</i> - -	30 6 00	4 4 11
<i>Shang-yu hyen</i> - -	29 59 14	4 25 7
<i>Shing hyen</i> - -	29 26 00	4 14 17
<i>Chu-ki hyen</i> - -	29 44 24	3 47 55
<i>Ning-po fû</i> - -	29 55 12	4 57 19
— by another - -	29 56 00	4 56 30
<i>Tse-ki hyen</i> - -	30 1 24	4 48 50
<i>Ting-bay hyen</i> - -	30 00 40	5 32 5
<i>Syang-shân hyen</i> - -	29 34 48	5 13 57
<i>Tay-chew fû</i> - -	28 54 00	4 40 54
<i>Chû-chew fû</i> - -	28 25 36	3 27 54
<i>Wen-chew fû</i> - -	28 2 15	4 21 7
<i>Tay-shun hyen</i> - -	27 34 48	3 21 50
<i>Pu-men-so</i> - -	27 15 36	4 6 58

^a Which seems to be a Corruption of *Mambu*, the Indian Word for this Sort of Cane, or Reed.

^b *Du Halde's China*, p. 96, & seqq.

^c The Lake, called *Tong-ting-hû*, lying in the midst of the Province, is above sixty Miles long, and thirty-five broad. It communicates with the *Yang-tse-kyang*; and receives, among other Rivers, the *Heng-kyang* from the South, and *Fwen-kyang* from the West.

^d But unequally; the Southern being twice as big as the other.

Places.	Latitude.	Longitude.
<i>Nhin-byâ-quan</i> - -	27 11 45	4 10 9
<i>Chang-shân hyen</i> - -	28 56 6	2 12 33
<i>Kyang-shân hyen</i> - -	28 47 20	2 22 3
<i>Long-fwen hyen</i> - -	28 8 00	2 40 37

6. Province,
Hu-quang.

SECT. VI.

Hu-quang, the sixth Province.

Bounds, Soil, and Produce. Division. *Vu-chang fû.* *Surprising Prospect.* *Han-yang fû.* *Ngan-lo fû.* *Syang-yang fû.* *Ywen-yang fû.* *Te-ngan fû.* *Wax Worms.* *Kin-chew fû.* *Whan-chew fû.* *Chang-cha fû.* *Great Festival.* *Yo-chew fû.* *Lake Tong-ting.* *Large Pines.* *Pau-king fû.* *Heng-chew fû.* *Chang-te fû.* *Ching-chew fû.* *Yong-chew fû.*

THIS great Province lies in the Middle of the Empire, between those of *Ho-nan*, on the North; *Kyang-nan*, and *Kyang-si*, on the East; *Quang-tong*, and *Quang-si*, on the South; *Quey-chew*, *Se-chwen*, and *Shen-si*, on the West. The Country is mostly plain, consisting of open Fields, watered by Lakes^c, Brooks, and Rivers, abounding with all Sorts of Fish, as the Lakes are covered with wild Fowl.

ONE meets with, in the Plains, incredible Numbers of Cattle, with all Sorts of Grain and Fruit, especially Oranges; and several Kinds of Citrons. Some of its Mountains produce Crystal, or Talk; others are covered with medicinal Herbs, or old Pines, fit for making those great Pillars used in *Chinese* Buildings. Besides the Mines abounding with Iron, Tin, Tottenague, and other Metals, Gold is found in the Sands of the Rivers and Torrents which descend from the Hills.

A GOOD deal of Paper is made of the *Bam-bûs* growing here. One sees Store of those little Worms, which produce Wax in the same Manner as Bees. In short, *Hu-quang* affords such Plenty, that it is commonly called *The Granary of the Empire*.

THE great River *Yang-tse-kyang* crossing it from West to East, divides it into two Parts^d; the *Hû-pe*, or Northern; and *Hû-nan*, or Southern. The former containing eight Cities of the first Rank, and sixty of the second and third.

The Southern Part has fifty-four *Chew* and *Hyen* subordinate to seven *Fû*, besides Boroughs, Villages, and fortified Towns.

CITIES of HŨ-QUANG



The Geogra-
phy.

1. The Northern Part.

	Chew.	Hyen.
1. <i>Vu chang fū</i> , Capital of the } Whole, presides over	1	9
2. <i>Han-yang fū</i> - - -	0	2 ^a
3. <i>Ngan-lo fū</i> - - -	2	5
4. <i>Syang-yang fū</i> - - -	1	6
5. <i>Ywen-yang fū</i> - - -	0	7 ^b
6. <i>Te ngan fū</i> - - -	1	5
7. <i>Hing-chew fū</i> - - -	2	11
8. <i>Wbang-chew fū</i> - - -	1	8

Vu-chang
fū.

1. *VU-CHANG FU* is the Capital both of the whole Province, and of the Northern Division; where the *Tsong-tu* of both Parts resides. This City, in Conjunction with *Han-yang fū*, (which is separated from it only by the River *Yang-tse-kyang*, and the little River *Han*) forms the most populous and frequented Place in all China.

VU-CHANG itself may be compared for Size to *Paris*. *Han-yang* (one of whose Suburbs extends to a Point where the Rivers *Han* and *Yang-tse-kyang* meet) is not inferior to *Lyons*, or *Roan*. Add to this, an incredible Number of great and small Barks, (never fewer than eight or ten thousand) spread all along both Rivers for above two Leagues together; some Hundreds of which are as long and high in the Sides, as most of those that lie at *Nantz*.

Surprising
Prospect.

A PERSON, who was to view, from an Eminence, this Forest of Masts, on one Side; and on the other, that vast Extent of Ground, covered over with Houses; would readily own, that he saw the finest Prospect of the Kind in the World.

As this City may be said to stand in the Center of the Empire, it has an easy Correspondence in Trade with the other Provinces, by Means of the *Kyang*; which here, though, at least, an hundred and fifty Leagues from the Sea, is three Miles broad, and deep enough to carry the biggest Ships. It is farther remarkable for Plenty of the best Tea, and the prodigious Demand for the Bambu Paper made here; besides, the Mountains, in its District, yield the fairest Kind of Crystal.

Han-yang
fū.

2. *HAN-YANG FU*, as hath been just now mentioned, is only separated from the Capital by the *Kyang*; and is washed also by the River *Han*, whence it takes its Name. It has, both within and without its Walls, several Lakes, abounding with Fish and wild Fowl. Its advantageous Situation for Trade renders the Inhabitants exceeding rich. It is remarkable for a very high Tower, built formerly in Honour of a young Maiden; whose Innocence and Virtue were justified, as they say, by a very extraordinary Prodigy. *Han-*

a *chwen hyen*, the only City under its Jurisdiction, is intirely surrounded with Lakes and Rivers. Several Kinds of Oranges and Citrons grow in its District; but never come to Perfection.

6. Province,
Hu-quang.

3. THE City *Ngan-lo fū* is built on the River *Han*, in a vast Plain, equally agreeable and fertile; but has nothing to distinguish it, except, that it is enriched by its Trade with the two former Cities.

Ngan-lo fū.

4. *SYANG-YANG FU*, standing also on the *Han*, has the same Advantage as the former with respect to Trade. They gather abundance of Gold out of the Rivers in its District; and, it is likely, the Mountains, wherewith Part of it is incumbered, afford rich Mines of it, was it permitted to open them; as they do of the *Lapis Armenus*, Vitriol, and a green Stone, of great Use in Painting. They are also stored with large old Pines, fit for Pillars; Houseleek, and physical Plants.

Syang-yang
fū.

c 5. *YWEN-YANG FU* is the most Northern City in the Province, near *Shen-fi*, standing on the River *Han*, and in a pretty large Plain, inc compassed with Mountains, which have a gentle Descent; and besides several Sorts of medicinal Herbs, produce abundance of very good Tin. The Soil is fertile every-where. In the District grows a remarkable Shrub; which, like the Ivy, climbs about Trees: It bears a Flower of a very pale Yellow; and the Extremities of its Branches are as fine as Threads of Silk.

Ywen-yang
fū.

d *CHU-SHAN HYEN*, one of its dependant Cities, lies on a River that falls into the *Han*; the Water of which is proper to take Spots out of Silk, and for sharpening Iron Tools: A Virtue, doubtless, owing to its being impregnated with certain Salts.

6. *TE-NGAN FU* is built on a River that falls into the *Yang-tse-kyang*, (which is not far off;) and, by several Branches, has a Communication with Lakes in the Neighbourhood.

Its whole District, which is inclosed on the North by Mountains, and on the South by Rivers that water it, is exceeding fertile. It is most remarkable for a Kind of white Wax, made by little white Worms, before-mentioned; of which they make Candles that are whiter than Wax, and give a clearer Light, as well as a more agreeable Smell.

Wax Worms.

f 7. *KIN-CHEW FU* is handsome enough, and of great Trade; scarce inferior to the Capital for Numbers of People; and divided by a single Wall in two Parts: One possessed by the *Chinese*, the other by *Tartars*, who compose the *Garison*. It is a common Saying, *That whoever is Master of Kin-chew, has the Key of China in his Hands*; and it is their Custom to build a Citadel

Kin-chew

^a In the Description, 1.

^b In the Description, 6.

^c See Vol. III. p. 583.

The Geogra-
phy.

Whang-
chew fū.

in all Places of Importance. It is surrounded by a Sort of Diversion was often attended with fatal Accidents, it is almost every-where suppressed.

Lakes, which abound with Fish; and render the Soil pleasant as well as fertile.

8. THE Situation of *Whang-chew fū*, on the great *Kyang*, its small Distance from the Capital, and the Number of Lakes wherewith it is surrounded, renders it delightful. Hence it is exceeding populous, and yields to few of the other Cities for Trade; a surprizing Number of Barks arriving there every Day. They catch in the River a great Number of Tortoises, large and small; which the Grandees keep in their Gardens, and Houses of Pleasure. They make excellent Spirits there; which are very strong, take-fire in an Instant, and have no bad Smell. There are also very good and large Chestnuts. Its whole Territory is admirably well improved, and agreeably watered. Some of the Mountains, that are to the North, are covered with Trees and Forests: They also afford Springs; whose Waters give the Tea a delicious Taste.

2. The Southern Part.

	Chew.	Hyen ^a .
1. <i>Chang-cha fū</i> , Capital, governs	1	11
2. <i>Yo-chew fū</i>	1	4
3. <i>Pau-hing fū</i>	1	9
4. <i>Hing-chew fū</i>	1	4
5. <i>Chang-te fū</i>	0	6
6. <i>Ching-chew fū</i>	1	6
7. <i>Yung-chew fū</i>	1	7

Chang-cha
fū.

1. *CHANG-CHA FU* is the chief City of *Hu-nan*, or the Southern Part of *Hu-quang*. It stands on a large River, that has a Communication with the great Lake *Tong-ting-hu*. The Ease, with which the Husbandmen convey the Water, from the Lakes and Rivers, into the Lands of its District, by Machines spoken of elsewhere, renders its Soil rich and fertile. In these Rivers abundance of Fish is caught, especially very good Lampreys ^b.

THE Country is partly plain, partly mountainous. The Hills yield very fine Cinnabar, and abundance of Talk; which, reduced to a Lime, and mixed with Wine, the Physicians say, is a wonderful Preservative to Health.

A CERTAIN *Mandarin*, Governor of one of its dependent Cities, whose Virtue had endeared him to the People, happening to be drowned in the River, they instituted a Festival in Honour of him, in the fifth Moon; which, afterwards, came to be observed all over the Empire. They celebrate it with Games, Feasts, and Combats on the Water, in Dragon-Boats. Formerly, Premiums were given the Victors: But as this

Sort of Diversion was often attended with fatal Accidents, it is almost every-where suppressed.

2. THE Situation of *Yo-chew fū* is admirable, being built on the Side both of the *Yang-tse-fu*, *kyang* and the *Tong-ting-hu*; which render it one of the wealthiest Cities in the Empire by its Trade.

THIS Lake, which resembles a Sea, is remarkable for the Greatness of its Circumference, (being more than fourscore Leagues;) for the abundance of its Waters, especially at certain Seasons; and the astonishing Quantity of Fish caught therein. Two of the greatest Rivers in the Province discharge themselves into it; and pass out again, afterwards, without any sensible Diminution.

ITS District, which is divided by the Lake, is exceeding fertile every-where, and stored with different Kinds of Orange and Lemon-Trees. Many of its Mountains are covered with Forests, chiefly of Pine-Trees: In some of them they find the *Lapis Armenus*, and green Stone; which, reduced to Powder, makes a very beautiful Colour for painting. In others, Talk, and little black Stones, the impalpable Powder of which is used as an effectual Remedy against the Quinsy and other Diseases of the Throat.

3. *PAU-KING FU* is built on the River *Pao-king Lo-kyang*, which falls into the *Heng-kyang*, and this into the Lake *Tong-ting*. Its Territory consists of fertile Valleys, and very fine Plains, excepting towards the Province of *Quang-si*, where it is mountainous.

TO the North of *U-kang chew*, one of its dependent Cities, where the River falls-down Rocks with astonishing Rapidity, they have erected a brazen Pillar, to which the Bark is fastened, till Measures are taken for ascending the Stream with Safety.

4. *HENG-CHEW FU*, a pretty large City, is situate at the Confluence of two Rivers ^c, which inclose Part of its Territory. Its Mountains are very agreeable, and well cultivated, or covered with Trees always green. The Country furnishes much Game, and has several Gold and Silver Mines, but none opened. Very good Paper is made here: In short, every thing is plenty.

5. *CHANG-TE FU* is a large City, built on the River *Ywen-kyang*, not far from the great Lake *Tong-ting*. Its District is of no great Extent, but the Country is the most fertile in all the Province; and its River, which is navigable almost from the Beginning to the Lake, causes Trade to flourish. It is remarkable for a peculiar Sort of Orange-Trees, which bear no Fruit till the Season for others is past; whence they

^a In the Description, the *Hyen* are 11, 7, 4, 9, 4, 9, 7.
^c See the Note ^c, at the Beginning of the Section.

^b *Du Halde's China*, p. 6, and 98, & seqq.
^d One is the *Heng-kyang*, before-mentioned.

The Geogra- phy. call them *Winter Orange-Trees*, but its Fruit has a delicious Taste. Its Mountains are full of fallow Deer, and bear Cedars, whose Fruit, though not good to eat, is hung-up in Chambers to perfume them. Store also of *Lapis Armenus* and even some *Manna* is found there.

Ching-chew fû. 6. *CHING-CHEW FU* is situate on an Angle made by two Rivers, and the Country watered by a Multitude of Brooks. Its Mountains, which are numerous, yield Abundance of Quicksilver, *Lapis Armenus*, and green Stones, fit for Painters; nor are they destitute of Gold and Silver Mines. The People who inhabit these Mountains want the Politeness of the Chinese Commonalty, being of a rude and savage Disposition, so that they are looked-on as Barbarians.

Yong-chew fû. 7. *YONG-CHEW FU*, the most Southerly City in the Province, stands amidst verdant Mountains, on a River, which, a little Way off, falls into the *Syang-kyang*, and whose Water is so clear, that in the deepest Places you may count the Flints and smallest Pebbles at the Bottom. Its Territory, though hilly, is well cultivated. Store of Bambûs grow in some Parts, and in others the *Lyen-wba*, with yellow Flowers, rarely found elsewhere.

BESIDES the eight dependant Cities, there are in this District two more of the second Order, which do not depend on any *Fû*, but have a Jurisdiction over other Cities. The first, *Tsin chew*, on the Borders of *Quey chew*, has under it three Cities of the third Rank: The second, *Ching chew*, (a great and very populous City, standing between two Rivers) whereon depend five of the same Order, all on the Borders of *Quang-tong*.

SITUATIONS of Places in Hu-quang, determined in 1716.

Places.	Latitude.	Longitude.
<i>Tsin-lân-vey</i>	27 4 48	7 54 40
<i>Tyen-que hyen</i>	26 48 0	7 28 16
<i>Tong-tau hyen</i>	26 16 48	7 0 0
<i>U-kang chew</i>	26 34 24	5 58 39
<i>Tong-ngân hyen</i>	26 13 12	5 15 0
<i>Tau chew</i>	25 32 27	5 0 0
<i>Ning-yuen hyen</i>	25 32 54	4 40 59
<i>Que-yang chew</i>	25 48 0	4 5 27
<i>Hing-ning hyen</i>	25 54 40	3 29 16
<i>Que-tong hyen</i>	26 3 36	2 54 30
<i>Yong-hing hyen</i>	26 4 48	3 43 39
<i>Yong-chew ja</i>	26 8 24	4 53 40

Table of Situations.

Places.	Latitude.	Longitude.
<i>Kû chew</i>	26 29 48	4 42 10
<i>Lay-yang hyen</i>	26 29 48	3 47 42
<i>Cha-lin chew</i>	26 53 40	3 5 27
<i>Heng-chew fû</i>	26 55 12	4 5 30
<i>Pau-king fû</i>	27 3 36	5 7 10
<i>Ywen chew</i>	27 24 30	7 3 10
<i>Sin-whâ hyen</i>	27 32 24	5 18 48
<i>Heng-shân hyen</i>	27 14 24	3 50 40
<i>Syang-tân hyen</i>	27 52 30	3 46 38
<i>Chang-châ fû</i>	28 12 0	3 41 43
<i>Ngân-whâ hyen</i>	28 13 12	5 2 40
<i>Ching-chew fû</i>	28 22 25	6 20 0
<i>Tau-ywen hyen</i>	28 52 10	5 17 21
<i>Ywen-kyang hyen</i>	28 45 30	4 15 0
<i>Ping-kyang hyen</i>	28 42 20	3 4 5
<i>Tong-ching hyen</i>	29 15 36	2 41 55
<i>Yo-chew fû</i>	29 24 0	3 34 5
<i>Tjong-yang hyen</i>	29 33 38	2 28 48
<i>Kong-ngân hyen</i>	30 1 0	4 31 10
<i>She-men hyen</i>	29 30 30	5 5 27
<i>Chang-te fû</i>	29 1 0	5 1 43
<i>Yong-ting-vey</i>	29 7 12	6 4 5
<i>She-chew-vey</i>	30 15 56	7 2 35
<i>Chang-yang hyen</i>	30 32 24	5 21 58
<i>King-chew fû</i>	30 26 40	4 23 40
<i>I-lin chew</i>	30 49 0	5 18 10
<i>Myen-yang chew</i>	30 12 22	3 16 50
<i>Que chew</i>	30 57 36	5 50 27
<i>Pau-kang hyen</i>	31 54 0	5 12 18
<i>Chû-shân hyen</i>	32 8 35	6 8 10
<i>Ywen-yang fû</i>	32 49 20	5 36 49
<i>Kû-ching hyen</i>	32 18 0	4 48 40
<i>Syang-yang fû</i>	32 6 0	4 22 44
<i>Sui chew</i>	31 46 48	3 12 18
<i>Ngân-lo fû</i>	31 12 0	4 56 32
<i>Te-ngân fû</i>	31 18 0	2 50 50
<i>Mâ-ching hyen</i>	31 14 24	1 36 49
<i>Ki chew</i>	30 4 48	1 10 20
<i>Hing-que chew</i>	29 31 56	1 22 48
<i>Whang-chew fû</i>	30 26 24	1 39 35
<i>Hân-yang fû</i>	30 34 38	2 18 23
<i>Vu-chang fû</i>	30 34 50	2 15 0

SECT. VII.

Ho-nan, the seventh Province.

Name and Bounds. Air and Produce. Soil. Remarkable Lake. Division. Kay-fong fû. Dreadful Inundation. Que-te fû. Chang-te fû. Wey-kyun fû. Whay-king fû. Ho-nan fû. Nan-yang fû. Yu-ning fû. Table of Situations.

* Du Haldé's China, p. 100, & seq.

The Geogra-
phy.Name and
Bounds.Air and
Produce.

Soil.

Remarkable
Lake.

Division.

Kay-fong
fü.Dreadful
Inundation.

HO-NAN is bounded on the North by a the Provinces of *Pe-che-li* and *Shan-si*; on the West by *Shen-si*; on the South by *Hu-quang*; and on the East by *Shan-tong*. It is likewise watered by the *Whang-ho*, or *Yellow River*. It is named *Chang-wha*, or *The Flower of the Middle*, because situate almost in the Middle of *China*.

THE *Chinese* say, that *Fo-hi*, the Founder of the Monarchy^a, and other ancient Emperors, invited by the Beauty and Fruitfulness of the Land, fixed their Seats here. For Delightfulness b no Country can compare with it: The Air is temperate, and very healthful. It abounds with Cattle, all Sorts of Oranges, Pomegranates, *European* Fruits and Grain; infomuch, that one shall have three Pounds of Meal for a Penny. The Quantity of Corn, Rice, Silk, and Cloth, which it furnishes by Way of Tribute, is astonishing.

EXCEPTING on the West-Side, where there are Mountains covered with Forests, the whole c Province is plain; and so duly watered, as well as cultivated, that one seems to travel through a vast Garden. Hence the *Chinese* commonly call it, *The Garden of China*.

IT is farther remarkable for a Lake, whose Water gives the Silk an inimitable Lustre, which has drawn a great Number of those concerned in that Manufacture to settle about it. In *Nan-yang*, one of its dependent Cities, there is a Kind of Serpent, whose Skin, which is speckled with d small white Spots, being steeped in a Vial full of Wine, is used by the Physicians as a Remedy against the Palsy.

BESIDES the Forts, Castles, and Garison-Towns, *Ho-nan* contains eight *Fü*, or Cities, of the first Rank, and an hundred and two of the second and third.

	<i>Che-w.</i>	<i>Hyen.</i>
1. <i>Kay-fong fü</i> , the Capital, governs -	4	30
2. <i>Que-te fü</i> -	1	8 ^b
3. <i>Chang-te fü</i> -	1	6
4. <i>We-kyun fü</i> -	0	6
5. <i>Whay-king fü</i> -	0	6
6. <i>Ho nan fü</i> -	1	13
7. <i>Nan yang fü</i> -	2	10 ^c
8. <i>Zhu-ning fü</i> -	2	12

1. **KAY-FONG FU** is a great, rich, and populous City, standing four Miles and an half f from the *Whang-ho*, in the Middle of a large and well-cultivated Plain; but its Situation is so very low, that the Water of the River is higher than the City. To guard against Inundations, they have built great Banks, or Dikes,

for the Space of above thirty Leagues. But in 1642, this City having held-out for six Months against more than an hundred thousand Rebels, the Commander of the Troops, which came to its Assistance, judging the only Expedient left for its Relief was, to break-down the Banks of the *Whang-ho*, in order to lay the Plain under Water, the Inundation was so sudden and violent, that the City itself was overflowed, and three hundred thousand of its Inhabitants drowned.

KAY-FONG appears to have been three Leagues in Compass before that Misfortune, and has been since rebuilt, but not so well as to hold its Place among the handsomest Cities of *China*.

2. **QUE-TE FU** stands in a vast Plain, and Que-te fü. in the Middle between two fine Rivers. All the Cities in its Dependence are rich, and very populous. The Country is well improved, and without any Hills; the Air very pure, and Soil fertile in all Sorts of Grain and Fruit. Oranges and Pomegranates are very plenty.

3. **CHANG-TE FU** lies in the Northern Chang-te fü. Part of the Province, which is there much streightned by the Provinces of *Pe-che-li* and *Shan-si*. Its District, though of no great Extent, is very fruitful, being watered by many Rivers, full of Fish; among which one resembles the Crocodile, whose Fat, if once set on Fire, is scarce possible to be extinguished till the whole is consumed.

ITS Mountains yield Loadstones, and divers Kinds of Wormwood. One of them is so steep, and difficult of Ascent, that in Time of War the Inhabitants retire to the Top, where there is a large Plain, and dwell in perfect Safety.

4. **WE-KRUN FU** stands on a River in Wey-kyun a sandy Country, and the worst Soil in all the fü. Province. Its District, like the former, is contracted by *Pe-che-li* and *Shan-si*. Excepting some Mountains on the Side next this last Province, the rest is a plain Country, and pretty well improved.

5. THE Territory of *Whay-king fü* is of very Whay-king fü. small Extent. On the North it is separated by Mountains from the Province of *Shan-si*, and on the South by the great River *Whang-ho*. The Air is very healthful, and the Soil no less fertile. It supplies the whole Province with Simples and medicinal Herbs.

6. **HO-NAN FU**, which bears the Name Ho-nan fü. of the Province, stands in the Midst of Mountains, between three Rivers. The *Chinese* formerly believed it was in the Center of the Earth, because it is in the Middle of their Empire. It is very large and populous. Its District is of

^a Who, by the *Chinese* Account, began his Reign 2952 Years before the Christian *Æra*.
Description, 6.

^c In the Description, but 6.

^b In the
large

The Geogra-
phy.

large Extent, and though surrounded with Moun-
tains, is very fruitful.

TENG-FONG HYEN, one of its fubor-
dinate Cities, is famous for the Tower built there
by the celebrated Chéu-kong, where he used to
observe the Stars. There is still an Instrument
to be seen which he employed to find the Meri-
dian Shadow, in order to discover the Height of
the Pole, and make other astronomical Observa-
tions. He lived more than a thousand Years be-
fore Christ, and the Chinese pretend he invented
the Mariners Compass.

Nan-
yang
fú.

7. THE District of Nan-
yang fú is very fine,
and though of very great Extent, is surprizingly
fertile; Provisions being exceeding cheap, and so
plenty, that numerous Armies have quartered
here a considerable Time, without incommoding
the Inhabitants in that Article.

THE City, situate on a small River, is neither
large, rich, nor populous. It is encompassed
with Mountains, some of which produce the
Lapis Armenus, and breed those Serpents spotted
with White, already spoken of in the general
Description of the Province.

Yu-ning fú.

8. YU-NING FU^a is built on the River
Yu-ho. Its District, which is very extensive, is
partly plain, and partly mountainous, especially
towards the North and South; but watered by
several Rivers, which produce Plenty of all Sorts
of Grain and Fruit^b.

SITUATIONS of PLACES, determined in 1714.

Table of Si-
tuations.

Places,	Latitude.	Longitude.
Tse chew	36 25 15	1 55 30 W.
Chang-te fú	36 7 20	1 58 30
Wey-que fú. In the		
Map, We-kyun fú	35 27 40	1 12 30
Whay-king fú	35 6 34	3 28 30
Tong-quang-wey	34 39 10	6 18 0
Tyang hyen	34 31 20	4 16 30
Si-chwen hyen	33 5 0	5 1 20
Sin-ye hyen	32 40 25	4 3 30
Pi-yang hyen. In the		
French Map, Ni, &c.	32 48 40	3 6 0
Ju-ning fú. In the		
Map, Yu-ning fú	33 1 0	2 7 30
Quang chew	32 12 36	1 28 30
Shang-ching hyen	31 55 30	1 10 30
Song-tse-quan	31 27 50	1 0 0
Sin-yang chew	32 12 25	2 28 30
Nan-yang fú	33 6 15	3 53 55
Shang-tsay hyen	33 19 20	2 6 0

^a Or, Zbu-ning fú; being written elsewhere, Ju-ning fú, in the French.
and 102, & seqq.

^b See the Natural History.

Places.	Latitude.	Longitude.
Lú-i hyen	33 56 50	0 54 0
Yen-ching hyen	33 38 20	2 23 50
Ho-nan fú	34 43 15	4 0 50
Teng-fong hyen	34 30 10	3 27 10
Tong-yang hyen. In the		
Map, Yong, &c.	34 52 40	2 54 0
Tong-tse hyen. In the		
Map, Yong, &c.	34 56 40	2 44 30
I-fong hyen	35 55 0	1 21 0
Kay-fong fú	34 52 5	1 55 30
Chin chew	34 42 0	1 26 0
She-ching hyen. Orig.		
Che-ching hyen	34 8 20	0 57 0
Kau-ching hyen	34 47 0	1 1 30
Yu-ching hyen	34 38 35	0 19 30
Qué-te fú	34 28 40	0 37 30

S. Province,
Shan-tong.

S E C T. VIII.

Shan-tong, the eighth Province.

Bounds and Produce. Fruit Tse-tse, and Silk.
Division. Tsi-nan fú. Yen-chew fú. Tsi-
ning chew. Birth-Place of Confucius. Tong-
chang fú. Porcelain Tower. Tsi-chew fú.
Ten-chew fú. Lay-chew fú. Table of Si-
tuations.

SHAN-TONG is bounded on the West by
Pe-che-li, and Part of Ho-nan; on the South
by Kyang-nan. The Gulf of Kyang-nan washes
it on the East, and that of Pe-che-li on the
North.

THE Numbers of Lakes, Brooks and Rivers,
besides the great imperial Canal, which crosses
Part of this Province, contribute towards render-
ing it one of the most plentiful Parts of the Em-
pire; nor is this extraordinary Plenty to be in-
terrupted, except by too great a Drought, for it
seldom rains here, or by the Havock that is some-
times made by Locusts.

FOWL, Eggs, fat Capons, Pheasants, Par-
tridges, Quails and Hares are exceeding cheap.
The Lakes and Sea afford a prodigious Quantity
of Fish, of which you may have several Pounds
for a Penny.

THE Soil produces all Kinds of Grain and
Fruit, especially fine wholesome Peaches, divers
Sorts of Nuts and Chestnuts, with Abundance of
Plumbs, excellent Pears, and the Tse-tse. These
three last they dry for transporting into the other
Provinces. The Tse-tse, which is a Sort of Fig,
is to be found no-where but in China; nor in

The Geogra- any Province thereof in such Plenty as in this of a with Fish. Hence the Country is exceeding fer-³ *Province*
phy. *Shan-tong.* tile, for nothing is to be seen but cultivated *Shan-tong.*

THERE is found in the Fields a Sort of white Silk, peculiar to this Province, fastened in long Threads to the Shrubs and Bushes by Worms, resembling Caterpillars. Of this they make Silks, (called *Kyen chew*) which are coarser, but more compact and strong, than those made of the Silk produced by the House-reared Worms.

Division. SHAN-TONG is subdivided into six Counties, or Districts, containing six Cities of the first Rank, and an hundred and fourteen of the second and third; besides more than fifteen Forts, built at the Entrances of all Ports and Rivers along the Coast: Likewise several populous Islands scattered over the Gulf; some of which afford very commodious Harbours for the Junks that trade to *Korea* and *Lyau-tong*.

	<i>Chew.</i>	<i>Hyen.</i>
1. <i>Tsi-nan fu</i> , the Capital, commands	4	26
2. <i>Yen-chew fu</i>	4	23
3. <i>Tong-chang fu</i>	3	15
4. <i>Tsing-chew fu</i>	1	13
5. <i>Teng-chew fu</i>	1	7
6. <i>Lay-chew fu</i>	2	5

Tsi-nan fu. 1. *TSI-NAN FU*, the Capital of this Province, is a very great and populous City. The Lake within its Walls, which supplies Canals throughout the City, together with the beautiful Buildings, render it very famous. Its Trade is carried-on chiefly by Means of the grand Canal^a, into which Goods are conveyed down the *Tsing-bo* from *Lu-kew*, a Village thereon, four Miles from *Tsi-nan*. The Commodities peculiar to this Country are the Silks before-mentioned, called *Kyen chew*, made of the Produce of the wild Worms; and the Works of *Lew-li*, or *Chinese* Glass, which are made at *Yen-ching*, a great Borough in the District of this Capital: But this Sort of Glass is more brittle than that of *Europe*, breaking when exposed to too sharp an Air.

Its District, which is very large, and extends to the Sea, abounds with all Sorts of Grain, and Herds of Cattle. Some of its Mountains have Iron Mines. The Lakes scattered over it are stored with Fish, and adorned with those Flowers called *Lyen-wa*.

Yen-chew fu. 2. THE Territory depending on *Yen-chew fu*^b, which is of great Extent, is shut-up between two famous Rivers; *Ta-chin-bo* to the North, and *Whang-bo* to the South. There are, besides, several other Rivers and some Lakes which abound

SOME of the Cities dependent on *Yen-chew*^{Tsi-ning} are remarkable. *Tsi-ning chew* is not inferior to it, either for Bigness, Multitude of Inhabitants, or Richness of its Trade; and its Situation, towards the Middle^c of the great Canal, renders it one of the greatest Marts in the Empire. *Kya-few hyen* is famous for being the Birth-Place of *Confusius*, the chief Doctor of the *Chinese*; who have erected here several Monuments, as so many public Testimonies of their Gratitude towards that great Man.

It is affirmed, that in the Neighbourhood of another little City, called *Kin-kyang hyen*^d, they formerly gathered much Gold, whence it has its Name, which signifies *Earth of Gold*. There are also divers Parts, especially towards *Tong-ping chew*, so intermixed with Woods and Fields, that they afford the most gay and agreeable Prospect imaginable^e. Within its District is the Village *Kya-kyia*; and the Temple of *Ti-wang myau*, near the City of *Shan-tsui*^f, of which we have given the Prospects.

3. *TONG-CHANG FU*^g, which is situate on the great Canal, is famous for its Riches, procured by the Plenty of Grain, and Fruits of all Kinds, which grow in its extensive District.

AMONG its dependent Cities, *Lin-tsin chew*, where the great Canal joins the River *Wey-bo*^h, is very considerable; being in some Sort the general Resort of all Kinds of Merchandizes and Barks. Few Cities in the Empire are more populous, and of better Tradeⁱ. It is no less famous for its Buildings, especially a beautiful Tower of eight Stories, raised without the Walls. The Outside, which is of Porcelain, is adorned with divers Figures. Within it is lined with finely polished Marble of several Colours. By a Stair-Case made in the Wall, one goes-up to all the Stories, and from thence to very fine Galleries of Marble; embellished with gilded Iron Rails, which encompass the Tower, and at the Corners with little tinkling Bells. Not far from this Tower are certain curious Temples, whose Manner would not be disagreeable to the Taste of the best *European* Architects.

4. THE Territory belonging to *Tsing-chew fu*^j is partly watered by Rivers, and partly covered with Hills. The Soil is very fertile, and the neighbouring Sea yields other Necessaries. The Skin alone of the Fish caught here brings a considerable Profit.

^a Above sixty Miles distant.

to the East. ^d Rather, *Kin-yang*; as in the Jesuits Maps, *Kyang* signifying a River, not *Earth*. ^e See Vol. III. p. 417, and 418. ^f The same, p. 418, and 471. ^g At the Distance of twenty-two Miles

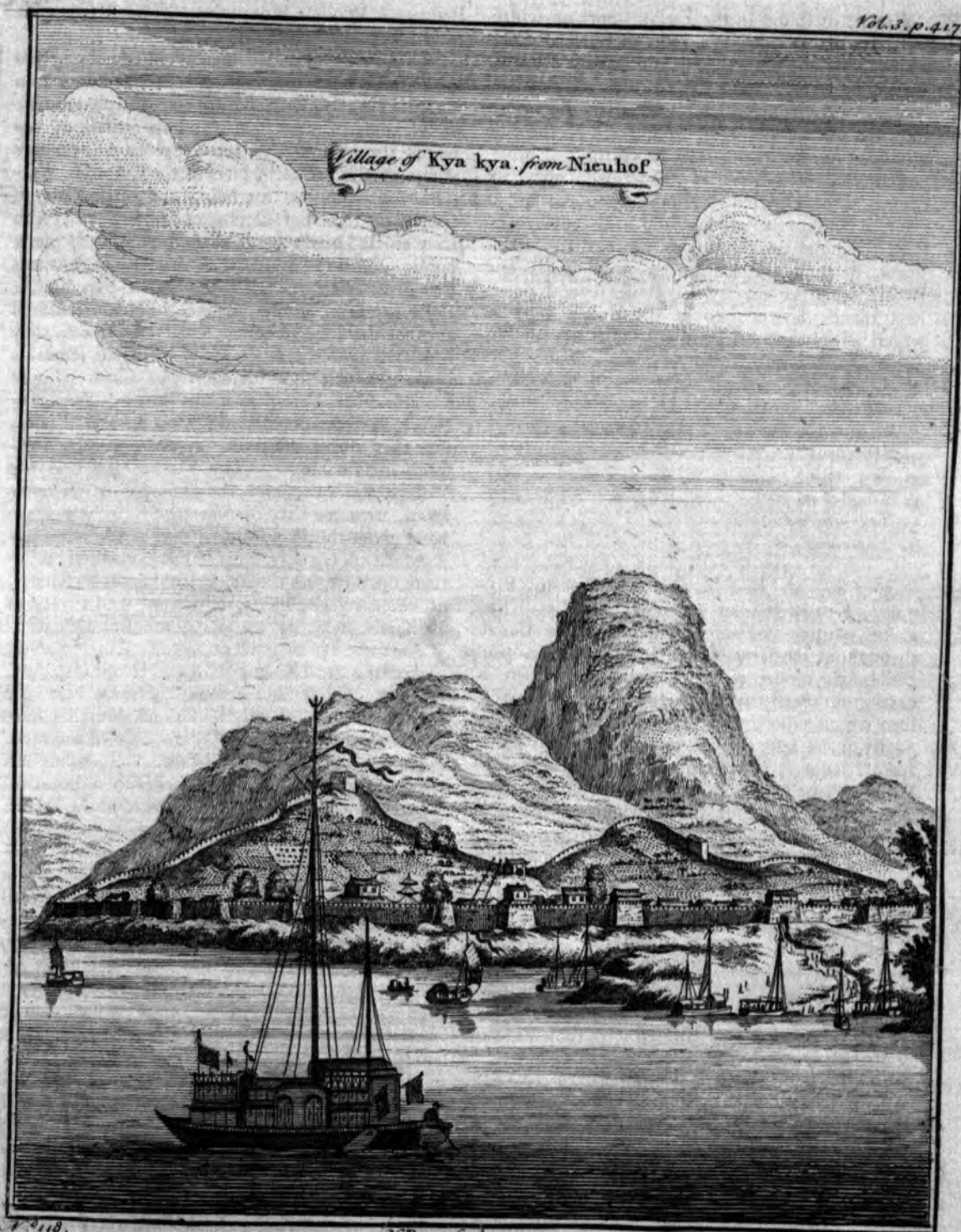
Vol. III. as before.

^h In the French, *Oei-bo*.

ⁱ See

^j See

Village of Kya kya. from Nieuhof



The Geogra- phy. THERE grows in the Bellies of the Cows a yellow Stone, called, by the *Chinese*, *Nyew-Whang*, as big sometimes as a Goose-Egg, but not more hard than the softest Crayon^a. The Physicians prefer it to the Bezoar, and say, that, when pulverized and taken in hot Water, it is an immediate Cure for Defluxions and Rheums; in the same Manner as the Stone that grows in the Gall of an Ox, cures the Jaundice.

Teng-chew fû. 5. *TENG-CHEW FU*, like several of its dependent Cities, is situate on the Sea, where there is a very commodious Harbour. It has also a strong Garison and several Ships of War to guard the Coast. In the Sea-Ports they catch Abundance of good Oysters, which are served as Dainties at the Tables of Lords. The Country is mountainous, yet fertile, being watered by Rivers. The *Nyew-whang* Stone is found in this City as well as the former. The Bambûs, every where else round, are here square.

Lay-chew fû. 6. *LAY-CHEW FU*, seated on a Promontory, is encompassed on one Side by the Sea, and on the other by Mountains. Some of its subordinate Cities also, as *Kyau chew*, which is very strong by Situation, are washed by the Ocean. Its whole District is rendered fertile by Rivers; and is intermixed with Plains and Mountains, especially toward the Coasts^b.

SITUATIONS in Shan-tong, determined in 1710.

Places.	Latitude.	Longitude.
<i>Table of Si-tuations.</i> <i>Te chew</i> - - -	37 32 20	0 3 36 W.
<i>Hay-fong hyen</i> - - -	37 50 51	1 16 36 E.
<i>Tsing-chew fû</i> - - -	36 44 22	2 15 00
<i>Lay-chew fû</i> ^c - - -	37 9 36	3 45 10
<i>Teng-chew fû</i> - - -	37 48 26	4 36 00
<i>Yen-chew fû</i> - - -	35 41 51	0 33 00
<i>Tsi-ning chew</i> - - -	35 33 00	0 16 30
<i>Hong-wû-pû</i> - - -	34 35 26	2 18 00
<i>Tay-chwáng-tsi</i> - - -	34 42 00	1 34 30
<i>Ting-tau hyen</i> - - -	35 11 18	0 44 30
<i>Tsau hyen</i> - - -	34 58 48	0 48 00 W.
<i>Yu-tay hyen</i> - - -	37 7 21	0 18 00 E.
<i>Tay-ngán chew</i> - - -	36 14 30	0 48 00
<i>Ngen hyen</i> - - -	37 15 10	0 1 40 W.
<i>Yu-ching hyen</i> - - -	37 2 30	0 22 30 E.
<i>Tsing-ping hyen</i> - - -	36 52 00	0 12 30 W.
<i>Ping-in hyen</i> - - -	36 23 2	0 6 00 E.
<i>Tsi-nan fû</i> - - -	36 44 24	0 39 00
<i>Sin hyen</i> - - -	36 16 48	0 34 30 W.
<i>Tong-cháng fû</i> - - -	36 32 24	0 18 30
<i>Ling-tsing chew</i> - - -	36 57 15	0 33 30
<i>Kyau chew</i> - - -	36 14 20	3 55 30 E.

^a A soft Mineral, of which Pencils are made for Drawing.

^c Latitude, by *Tartoux*, thirty-seven Degrees ten Minutes nine Seconds: Longitude, three Degrees forty-five Minutes thirty Seconds.

^d Latitude, by *Rgis*, thirty-five Degrees fifty-five Minutes: Longitude, three Degrees thirty Minutes.

Places.	Latitude.	Longitude.
<i>Wey-hay-vey</i> - - -	37 33 30	6 2 00
<i>Tsing-hay-vey</i> - - -	36 53 00	6 7 20
<i>Ngan-shán-vey</i> - - -	36 20 24	4 33 30
<i>Ngán-tong-vey</i> - - -	35 8 20	3 21 30
<i>Ching-shán-vey</i> - - -	37 23 50	6 30 00
<i>Chú-ching hyen</i> ^d - - -	36 00 00	3 29 30

SECT. IX.

Shan-fi, the ninth Province.

Bounds and People. Soil and Produce. Division.
Tay-ywen fû. Carpets. Sepulchres. Ping-yang fû. Lû-ngan fû. Fwen-chew fû. Tay-tong fû. *Soil and Produce.*

THIS Province, which is the least in China, is bounded on the East by *Pe-che-li*; on the South by *Ho-nan*; on the West by *Shen-fi*; and on the North, it is separated from *Tartary* by the great Wall.

THE first Inhabitants of China, as the History relates, settled in this Province; whose Climate is healthful and agreeable. Though some of its numerous Mountains are frightful and uncultivated, yet most of them are well improved; being cut into Terrasses from Bottom to Top, and quite covered with Corn. For, in several Parts of them, they find four or five Feet Depth of Earth without the least Stone; and their Tops are crowned with very fair Plains. They are farther remarkable for inexhaustible Mines of Coal; which is used either in Lumps, or ground and made into Cakes, other Fuel being scarce. Rice does not thrive so well here as elsewhere, because Canals are not so numerous: But it abounds in all other Grain, especially Wheat and Millet; which are carried into the other Provinces, as well as dried Grapes: For they make no Wine of those produced here.

THIS Province furnishes abundance of Musk, Porphyry, Marble and Jasper of divers Colours; the *Lapis Armenus*, and Iron Mines; from whence they supply other Parts with all Sorts of Utensils for the Kitchen. One meets also with Lakes of Salt-Water, which yield Salt; with many hot and boiling Springs.

SHAN-SI is divided into five Districts, containing five Cities of the first Rank, and eighty-five of the second and third; without reckoning a great Number of Forts, built at certain Distances, to defend the great Wall, and render the Roads secure: Some of which are larger and better peopled than many of the Cities.

The Geogra-
phy.

	Chew.	Hyen.
1. <i>Tay-ywen fū</i> , the Capital, } governs	5	20
2. <i>Ping-yang fū</i> - - - - -	6	28
3. <i>Lū-yang fū</i> - - - - -	0	8
4. <i>Fwen-chew fū</i> - - - - -	1	7
5. <i>Tay-tong fū</i> - - - - -	4	7

Tay-ywen
fū.

1. *TAY-YWEN FU*, an ancient City, is about three Leagues in Compass, and inclosed with strong Walls. It is very populous; and was formerly a very fine City, full of beautiful Palaces, where dwelt the Princes of the Blood of the *Tay-ming* Family: But, at present, they are gone quite to Ruin: Nor dare any-body rebuild them. It has a small *Tartar* Garison, under an *Ho-tong-ta*; and stands on the *Twen-ho*.

THIS River, whose Name is found in the most ancient *Chinese* Books, is neither broad nor deep; yet falling, after a pretty long Course, into the *Yellow River*, it gives a Communication with the Provinces of *Ho-nan* and *Kyang-nan*.

Carpets.

BESIDES the Manufactories for Silks here, there is a particular one for Carpets, after the *Turkish* Fashion, which they make of any Dimensions required; and as the Mountains, which are covered with Woods, yield abundance of excellent Iron, a great Trade is driven in Iron-Works.

Sepulchres.

ON the neighbouring Mountains are to be seen very handsome Sepulchres, either of Marble or Stone, which take up a great deal of Ground; and, at convenient Distances, are placed triumphal Arches, Statues of Heros, with Figures of Lions, Horses, and other Animals, in different Attitudes, and very natural. The Whole is inc compassed with a Kind of Forest of ancient Cypress, planted checker-wise.

Ping-yang
fū.

2. *PING-YANG FU* is not inferior to the Capital; either for Antiquity, Fertility of Soil, or Extent of its District. It is situate on the River *Fwen-ho*, and is more than four Miles in Compass. Several of its dependent Cities are very considerable; without reckoning an infinite Number of very populous Boroughs and Villages.

ITS District is partly plain, partly mountainous. All the Lands are very fertile, except those near some untilled and frightful Mountains. It is divided by two Rivers. On the West and South Sides it is washed by the *Whang-ho*. Near *Ngan-i hyen* there is a Lake, of whose Water, which is as salt as the Sea, they make abundance of Salt.

Lū-ngan fū.

3. THE Territory of *Lu-ngan fū* is not large; but it is agreeably situated almost at the Head of the River *Tso-tsang-ho*. Its District is pretty full of Hills; yet the Lands produce all Sorts of Ne-

a cessaries; and the Whole is spread over with Bo-roughs and Villages.

4. *FWEN-CHEW FU*, which lies between the Capital and *Ping-yang*, takes its Name from the River *Fwen-ho*, on the West Side whereof it stands, in a Place very commodious for Trade. Almost all the Cities of its District, which is not large, lie between this River and the *Whang-ho*.

THE Country, though hilly, is well improved; abounding with all Sorts of Grain, thick Forests, and good Pastures. They make a strong Liquor here of Rice, called *Yang-tsyū*, wherein they steep Mutton; which is reckoned very delicious and nourishing. In this Tract one meets with a great Number of Baths and Springs almost boiling hot; whose Waters differ both in Colour and Taste.

5. *TAY-TONG FU* is neither so ancient nor large as the other Cities of the Province: But is of Importance, as being situated in the midst of Mountains, and in the only Spot which lies exposed to the Incursions of the *Tartars*. Hence it is one of the best fortified Places; and furnished with a numerous Garison.

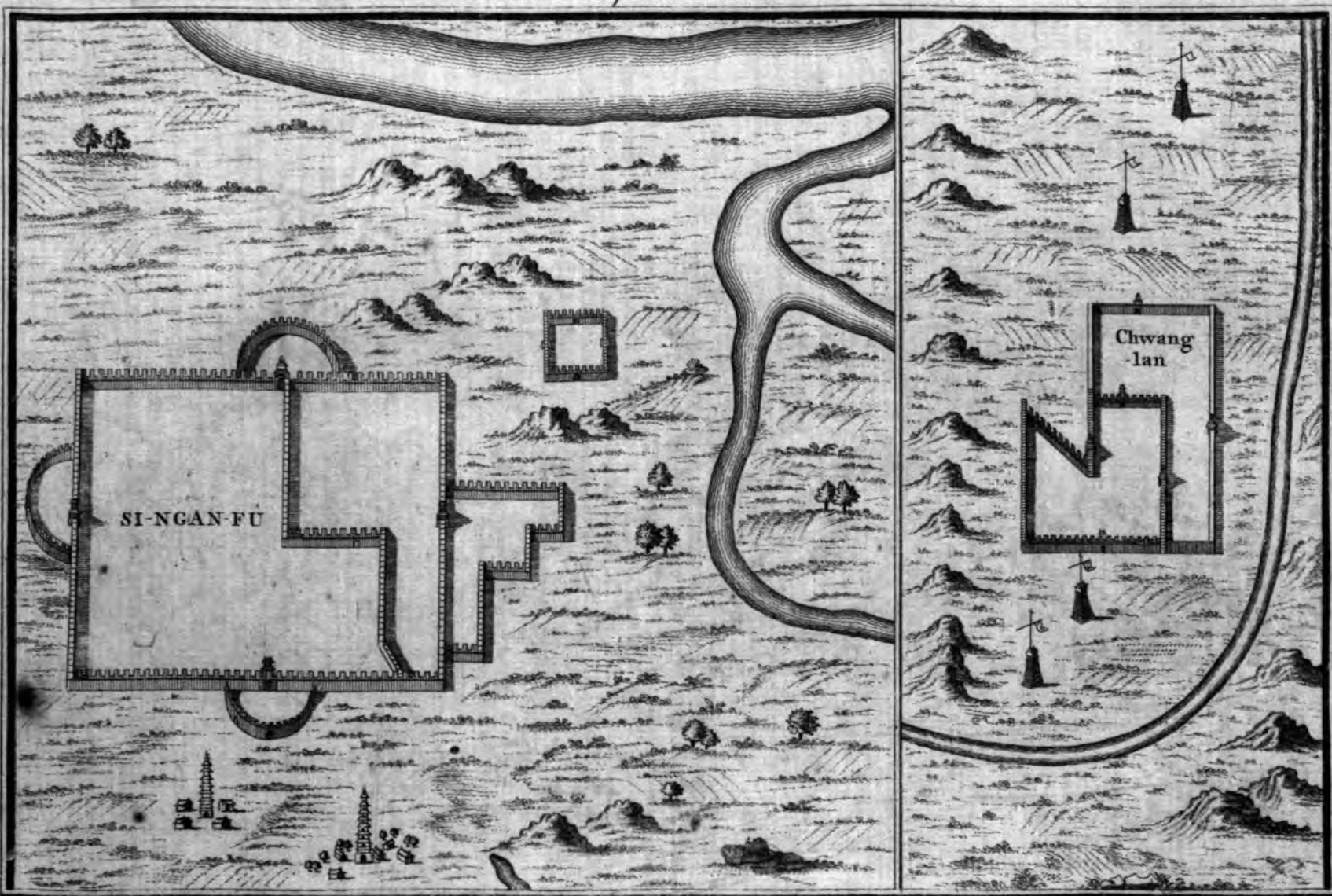
ITS Territory, which is very large, is surrounded with a great Wall^a; along which there are Forts built from Space to Space, provided with Forces for its Defence. In the Mountains, with which it is covered, there is found excellent *Lapis Armenus*, with abundance of medicinal Herbs. Some of them produce a red Stone; which being steeped in Water, is used instead of Vermilion, for taking the Impression of Seals: Others furnish the Azure, Marble, and Jasper, of all Colours; particularly, that Kind of Jasper named *Tu-she*, which is very transparent, and as white as Agat^b. There is a great Trade driven in all Sorts of Skins dressed here^c.

SITUATIONS in Shan-fi, determined in 1712.

Places.	Latitude.	Longitude.	
<i>Tyen-ching-kew</i> - - -	40 28 30	2 24 30	W. Table of Situations.
<i>Tsū-mā-pau</i> - - -	40 24 00	3 33 00	
<i>Shū-hū-kew</i> - - -	40 17 00	4 12 00	
<i>Lew-tse-in</i> - - -	39 30 40	5 24 30	
<i>Tay-tong fū</i> - - -	40 5 42	3 12 00	
<i>Wey-chew</i> - - -	39 50 54	1 52 30	
<i>Ing chew</i> - - -	39 39 00	3 15 00	
<i>Sū chew</i> - - -	39 25 12	4 1 30	
<i>Ho-kew hyen</i> - - -	39 14 14	5 27 00	
<i>Pau-te chew</i> - - -	39 4 44	5 40 00	
<i>Tay chew</i> - - -	39 5 50	3 30 30	
<i>U-tay hyen</i> - - -	38 45 36	3 4 30	
<i>Tsing-lo hyen</i> - - -	38 31 12	4 31 30	
<i>Lin hyen</i> - - -	38 4 50	5 30 40	
<i>Tay-ywen fū</i> - - -	37 53 30	3 55 30	

^a The North Part is the great Wall, and the rest of the same Kind of Building.
^c Du Hald's *China*, p. 6, and 106, & seqq.

^b Used in making



Geography.	Places.	Latitude.	Longitude.
	<i>Yong-ning chew</i>	37 33 36	5 22 30
	<i>Fen-chew fû</i>	37 19 12	4 46 30
	<i>Yong-ho hyen</i>	36 48 00	5 51 00
	<i>Ki chew</i>	36 6 00	5 54 00
	<i>Kyâng chew *</i>	35 37 32	5 15 00
	<i>Pu chew</i>	34 54 00	6 13 30
	<i>Whân-kew hyen</i>	34 57 36	4 45 30
	<i>Tse chew</i>	35 30 00	3 39 00
	<i>Lû-ngân fû</i>	36 7 12	3 28 30
	<i>Lyau chew</i>	37 2 50	3 1 00
	<i>Lo-ping hyen</i>	37 37 50	2 43 30
	<i>Yu-tse hyen</i>	37 42 00	3 43 30
	<i>Ping-yang fû</i>	36 6 00	4 55 30

S E C T. X.

Shen-fi, the tenth Province.

Bounds. Air, Soil, and Produce. Drugs. Gold Mines. Minerals. Animals. Flowers. Division. Si-ngan fû. Walls and Palace. Garrison. Yen-ngan fû. Fong-tsyang fû. Han-chong fû. Surprizing Road. Bird of Prey. Ping-lyang fû. Kong-chang fû. Ling-tau fû. Kin-yang fû. Lan chew. Kan chew.

Bounds.

THIS Province, which is in the North-West Part of China, has on the North, the great Wall, which separates it from Tartary; on the West, the Countries of Koko-nor and the Si-fan; on the South, the Provinces of Se-chwen and Hu-quang; and on the East, Shan-fi.

Air, Soil, and Produce.

THE Air is temperate; the People mild, civil, obliging, and better affected to Strangers than the Chinese of Shan-fi and Pe-che-li. The Overflowing of Torrents and Rivers renders the Soil very fruitful.

THIS Country produces little Rice; but abounds with Wheat and Millet; which grows here so fast, that, during Winter, the Husbandmen suffer their Sheep to browse on it; knowing that it will thrive the better for it in Spring. But the Locusts, to which this Province is subject, often destroys the Harvest.

Drugs.

FROM hence also comes abundance of Drugs; especially Rhubarb, Honey, Wax, Musk, perfumed Wood which resembles Sanders, Red-Lead, and Pit-Coals, which are inexhaustible.

Gold-Mines.

HERE are also rich Gold-Mines, though unopened: And so great a Quantity of that Metal is found in the Rivers and Brooks, that an infinite Number of Persons subsist by separating it from the Sand.

Minerals.

A GREAT Number of Quarries yield a soft Stone, or Mineral, called *Hyung-wang*, of a

a red Colour, inclining to yellow, and speckled with little black Spots. Out of it they cut Vessels of several Kinds. The Physicians look on it as a sovereign Remedy against all Sorts of Poison, malignant Fevers, and the Dog-Day Heats; infusing it in Wine before they make use of it. Little blue Stones are also found here, inclining to black, and interspersed with small white Veins: They are given pulverized, to prolong Life.

Animals.

STAGS and Deer range the Country in Herds. Here is also abundance of Bears, wild Bulls, and Creatures resembling Tygers, whose Skins are in much Request; a Kind of Goats, from whence they take the Musk; and of Sheep, with very long and thick Tails, whose Flesh is very well-tasted: Not to mention a particular Species of Bats as big as Hens, which the Chinese prefer to the nicest Pullets.

THEY make a very pretty Stuff of Wool and Goat-Hair mixed; using the Hair that grows in the Winter, as being more fine. The Birds, called *The Golden Hens*, much esteemed for their Beauty, are also found in this Province.

ALL Sorts of Flowers grow here; particularly one, much esteemed, called *The Queen of Flowers*, resembling the Rose, but more beautiful; although the Smell is not so pleasant, the Leaves are longer, and the Stalk is without Prickles. Its Colour is a Mixture of white and red; yet some of them are red and yellow. The Shrub it grows on is like the Elder-Tree.

SHEN-SI is divided into two Parts; *I-tong*, the Eastern; and *I-fi*, the Western; which contain eight Cities of the first, and one hundred and six of the third Rank; besides a great Number of Forts, built from Space to Space, along the great Wall.

1. The Eastern Part.

	Chew.	Hyen.
1. <i>Si-ngan fû</i> , the Metropolis, governs	6	31
2. <i>Yen-ngan fû</i>	3	16
3. <i>Fong-tsyang fû</i>	1	7
4. <i>Han-chang fû</i>	2	14

1. *SI-NGAN FU*, the Seat, for several Ages, of the Chinese Emperors, is, next to *Pe-king*, one of the largest, fairest, and most populous Cities in China. It stands in a great Plain; and is the Residence of the *Tsong-tû* of *Shen-fi* and *Se-chwen*, as well as of the Governor of the Eastern Part of *Shen-fi*. It drives a great Trade, especially for Mules; which are so well trained, that they sell at *Pe-king* for five or six hundred Livers a-piece.

* Latitude, by another Jesuit, thirty-five Degrees thirty-seven Minutes: Longitude, four Degrees forty-one Minutes fifteen Seconds.

The Geogra-
phy,
Walls and
Palace.

THE Walls, which form an equilateral Square, four Leagues in Compass^a, are very broad and high, flanked with Towers at the Distance of a Bow-shot from one another, and inclosed with a good Ditch. Some of its Gates are very magnificent, and remarkable for their Height.

THERE is still to be seen a Palace where dwelt the ancient Kings of the Province, who were very powerful. The rest of the Buildings are no better than those of other Cities. Nor is the Furniture so neat as in the Southern Provinces.

Garison.

THE principal Forces of the *Tartars*, designed for the Defence of the North of *China*, are in Garison here, under a *Tsyan-kyun*, or General of their Nation; who, with his Soldiers, inhabit one Part of the City, separated from the rest by a Wall. The People of the Country are more robust, brave, hardy, and even taller than elsewhere; which renders its Militia more formidable than those of almost all the other Provinces.

THE Mountains of the Territory of *Si-ngan fu* are very agreeable, and abound with Game; as well as that Sort of Bats, as big as Pullets, spoken of before. They also afford a Kind of white Earth, highly valued by the Ladies; who, infusing it in Water, use it to whiten the Complexion^b.

Yen-ngan
fu.

2. *YEN-NGAN FU* is situate on the *Yen-ho*, in an agreeable Plain. It has, within its Walls, a pretty high Hill, remarkable for the fine Buildings that are upon it. Its Mountains distil a bituminous Liquor, which they call *Oil of Stone*, and use for Lamps.

THE Country is very rich in Martins, Sables, and other choice Furs. It abounds likewise with all Sorts of fine Marble; and produces, almost every-where, those Shrubs, already described, which produce the Rose-like Flowers, reared with so much Care in the Gardens of the Grandees.

Fong-tsyang
fu.

3. *FONG-TSYANG FU* takes its Name from a fabulous Bird, which the *Chinese* describe with Variety of admirable Colours, and paint sometimes on their Cloaths and Furniture. It is very large; and the Buildings handsome enough. Its District is well cultivated, as well as watered by Brooks and Rivers.

Han-chong
fu.

4. THE whole District of *Han-chong fu*, which is large and populous, stands on the River *Han*; by whose Branches the Country is watered. The high Mountains and Forests, wherewith it is inclosed, serve for Bulwarks. The Valleys furnish Plenty of Necessaries, as well as Honey, Wax, Musk, and Red-Lead. Fallow

a Beasts are very numerous; especially Deer, Stags, and Bears; the Feet of which last, especially the fore Feet, are reckoned delicious Morfels. 10. Province Shen-si.

THE Road made formerly over the Mountains, leading to the Capital, has something surprising in it. Upwards of an hundred thousand Men performed it with incredible Dispatch.

They levelled Hills, and made Arches from one Mountain to another; supporting them by Pillars, when the intervening Valley was too wide. These Bridges are in some Places so high, that one cannot behold the Precipice without Horror: Four Horsemen may ride a-breast over them: And, for more Security, they have Rails on each Side. At certain Distances, there are Villages and Inns for the Convenience of Travellers.

THE *Hay-tsing*, a Bird of Prey, is found only in the District of this City, and some particular Parts of *Tartary*. It may be compared to our best Falcons for Sprightliness and Courage.

c All that are caught, are sent to the Emperor's Falconry.

2. The Western Part.

	Chew.	Hyen.
1. <i>Ping-lyan fu</i> , or <i>Ping-lyang fu</i> , governs	3	7
2. <i>Kong-chang fu</i>	3	10
3. <i>Ling-tau fu</i>	2	13
4. <i>King-yang fu</i>	1	4

Lan-chew is the Capital.

1. *PING-LYANG FU* stands on a Branch of the *Kin-ho*, and abounds with every Thing. The Climate is very mild, its District well watered; and the agreeable Prospect of Mountains surrounding it, renders it a charming Habitation.

2. *KONG-CHANG FU* is a City of Trade, and very populous, situate on the *Whey-ho*. The almost inaccessible Mountains which inclose it, secured it against the Invasions of the *Tartars*. A Sepulchre is shewn here, which, they say, is that of *Fo-hi*; which, if so, must be the most ancient Monument in the World^d.

THE District affords Plenty of Musk. Almost all its Mountains yield the Mineral *Hyung-whang*; and the dark blue Stone, streaked with white; both before-mentioned.

3. *LING-TAU FU* stands on a River that falls into the *Whang-ho*. It is famous for the great Quantity of Gold found in the Sand of the neighbouring Rivers and Torrents. The Country is full of Mountains, which abound with wild Bulls, and certain Animals resembling Tygers; whose Skins are used for Winter-Cloathing.

^a *Le Comte* says, but three of his Measure.

^b *Du Halde's China*, p. 6, and 108, & seq. Also *Le Comte*, p. 81. ^c In *Du Halde's* Table, it has no dependent Cities; but in his Description, we find 5. In the same Place, *King-chang* has only 7 *Hyen*, and *Ling-tau* 3. ^d He began his Reign, according to the *Chinese*, two thousand nine hundred and fifty-two Years before the Christian *Æra*.

The Geogra-
phy.

Kin-yang
fû.

THE Valleys are covered with Corn, and the a Banks of Rivers with Cattle, especially Sheep; whose Tails are very long, and Flesh delicious.

4. KING-YANG FÛ^a has always been looked on as a Barrier against the Incurſion of the Tartars. The deep Ditches incompaſſing it, and its ſtrong Walls; the River, that almoſt ſurrounds it; and the Forts, built from Space to Space, joined to the Mountains and Rivers, by which it is, as it were, incloſed, render it a Place of great Strength.

THE Diſtrict is very fruitful. It produces a certain Herb named *Kin-fi*, that is, *Gilded Silk*; which is conſidered as an excellent Remedy; alſo a Kind of Beans, affirmed to be an admirable Specific againſt all Sorts of Poiſon.

Lan chew.

ALTHOUGH *Lan-chew* is only of the ſecond Rank, and depends on the former, yet it is the Capital of this Weſtern Part, and Seat of the Governor; becauſe, being near the great Wall, and principal Gates in the Weſt, Succours are eaſily ſent from hence to the Soldiers, who defend the Entrance. Though not large, it is the beſt City to be met with on the *Yellow River*. Its Trade conſiſts principally in Skins, which come from *Tartary*, by Way of *Sining* and *To-pa*; alſo in woollen Stuffs, whereof a Kind of fine Serge, named *Kû-zhong*, is moſt eſteemed; being nigh as dear as the common Satin, but very ſubject to be Moth-eaten; the coarſer Sort is called *Ko-be*. There is another Stuff, called *Pe-zhong*, made of ſhort-teazed Hair; but dear, and ſubject to the ſame Inconvenience. The *Myew-zhong*, made of Cow's Hair, is coarſe, and almoſt as thick as Kerſy. Laſtly, the *Tye-be-myen*, made of Thread and Worſted; but not ſo ſubſtantial and cloſely woven as our Linſey-woolſey. After all, *Lan-chew* is not reckoned a rich City in *China*^b.

Kan chew.

AMONG the fortified Places in this Province, for defending the great Wall, beſides *Si-ning* and *To-pa*, before mentioned, may be reckoned *So-chew* and *Kin-tan*, *Kan-chew*, *Lyang-chew*, *Ning-hya-wei*, and *Yu-ling-wei*. At theſe Places General-Officers are poſted with Troops: He who reſides at *Kan-chew* being Generaliſſimo. This City and *So-chew* are very conſiderable. In the firſt^c, a Vice-Roy reſides, and ſeveral *Mandarins*; the principal among whom receive their

Orders from none but the Court. The ſecond is pretty large, of equal Strength, and its Governor very powerful. It is divided into two Parts; one inhabited by the *Chineſe*, and the other by Strangers, who come to trade here^d. It ſtands at the extreme North-Weſt Corner of all *China*, toward *Hami*, or *Khamil*, a little within the Wall; where is the Fort and Gate of *Hya-yu-quan*^e. But *Ning-hya* exceeds the reſt of theſe Fortreſſes; being handſomer, richer, and better built than moſt Cities of the Empire^f. It is, at leaſt, fifteen *Li*^g in Compaſs, and ſtands [five Miles] to the Weſt of the *Whang-bo*, whence Canals are cut. Woollen Goods and *Turkiſh* Carpets are made here. The Mountains in its Diſtrict are ſo high and ſteep, that they ſerve in Place of the great Wall, for ten Leagues together. *Si-ning chew* is not large, but exceeds *Ning-hya* in Trade; on which Account *To-pa*, though only a Borough, is of more Worth than a large City^h. Theſe two Places ſtand in the utmoſt Borders Weſtward towards the Country of *Koko-nor*.

10. Province
Shen-fi.

SITUATIONS in Shen-fi, determined in 1712.

Places.	Latitude.	Longitude.
<i>Shin-mû hyen</i> —	38 55 20	6 22 30
<i>Yu-ling-wei</i> —	38 18 8	7 6 00
<i>Tſing-ping-pau</i> —	37 40 48	7 48 00
<i>Whâ-mâ-fû</i> —	37 52 45	9 25 30
<i>Ning-hya-wei</i> —	38 32 40	10 21 00
<i>Chong-wei</i> —	37 39 35	11 18 00
<i>Lyang chew</i> ⁱ —	37 59 00	13 40 30
<i>Kân chew</i> —	39 00 40	15 32 30
<i>Sû chew</i> —	39 45 40	17 21 30
<i>Kyâ-yu-quan</i> ^k —	39 48 20	17 37 45
<i>Si-ning chew</i> —	36 39 20	14 40 30
<i>Sin-tau fû</i> —	35 21 36	12 30 00
<i>Kong-châng fû</i> —	34 56 24	11 45 00
<i>Kyay chew</i> —	33 19 12	11 23 33
<i>Han-chong fû</i> —	32 56 10	9 16 5
<i>Hing-ngan chew</i> —	32 31 20	7 6 49
<i>Chin-ngân hyen</i> —	33 15 30	7 14 38
<i>Pong-tſyâng fû</i> —	34 25 12	8 58 55
<i>Long chew</i> —	34 48 00	9 30 36
<i>Ping-lyâng fû</i> —	35 34 48	9 48 00
<i>Kû-ywen chew</i> —	36 3 30	10 7 30
<i>King-yâng fû</i> —	36 3 00	8 46 00

Table of Si-
tuations.

^a Elſewhere, *Kin-yang*, and *Hing-yang fû*.

^b *Du Halde's China*, p. 6, and 109, & ſeq.

^c *Kan-*

chew, is the famous *Campion* mentioned by *Marco Polo*. See *Hiftoire de Gentchifcan*, by *Gaubil*, Quarto, Paris, 1739, p. 39. Note 1.

^d *Du Halde*, as before, p. 21, and 108.

^e Or, *Kya-yu-quân*.

^f It was,

for a Time, the Seat of the Emperors of the *Hin*, called *Si-hya*, mentioned before, p. 4. whoſe Dominions extended over moſt of *Shen-fi*, Part of *Tartary*, as far as *Hami*, or *Khamil*, with the Country of *Cba-chew*, till deſtroyed by *Jengbiz Khân*. See *Gaubil's Abridgment of the Hiſtory of the five firſt Emperors of the Moguls*, in *Saucier's Obſervations Mathematiques*, &c. p. 188, & ſeq.

^g Or, four Miles and an half.

^h *Du*

Halde, as before, p. 21.

ⁱ Latitude, by *Regis*, thirty ſeven Degrees fifty nine Minutes: Longitude, thirteen Degrees fifty ſix Minutes.

^k Latitude, by the ſame, thirty nine Degrees forty nine Minutes twenty Seconds.